This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

IN

LATIN COMPOSITION

BAKER AND INGLIS

PART III

KD45005

HU709.207

Harvard College Library

SPECIAL COLLECTION
RELATING TO
HARVARD UNIVERSITY

HIGH SCHOOL COURSE IN LATIN COMPOSITION

PART III

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY
NEW YORK · BOSTON · CHICAGO
SAN FRANCISCO

MACMILLAN & CO., LIMITED
LONDON · BOMBAY · CALCUTTA
MELBOURNE

THE MACMILLAN CO. OF CANADA, LTD.
TORONTO

HIGH SCHOOL COURSE

IN

LATIN COMPOSITION

BY

CHARLES McCOY BAKER

HORACE MANN HIGH SCHOOL, TEACHERS COLLEGE

AND

ALEXANDER JAMES INGLIS

HORACE MANN HIGH SCHOOL, TEACHERS COLLEGE

PART III

New York

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

1914

All rights reserved

KD45005
~~HU709.20.7~~
HARVARD COLLEGE
SEP 17 1917
LIBRARY

COPYRIGHT, 1909,
BY THE MACMILLAN COMPANY.

Set up and electrotyped. Published January, 1909.
Reprinted August, 1909.
Published in parts, September, 1909; January, 1914.

Norwood Press
J. S. Cushing Co. — Berwick & Smith Co.
Norwood, Mass., U.S.A.

PREFACE

THIS book contains Part III of the High School Course in Latin Composition, whose aim is to provide exercises in writing Latin for the last three years of the school course.

There is included in this book, also, a summary of Elements of Syntax for references.

Treatment. — In the lessons syntax is treated systematically by topics. For content and vocabulary the exercises are based on Caesar's Commentaries and on the Orations of Cicero which are usually read in our schools.

Summary of the Elements of Syntax. — The first portion of the book consists of a summary of the Elements of Syntax. This summary contains a statement and explanation of those principles of syntax which are essential for writing Latin in the school, so that in the lessons direct reference may be made to this summary instead of to the confusing mass of information given in the large grammars. References to the grammars are given, however, so that, if desired, they may be used instead of, or in addition to, those given in the summary. The illustrative examples are, for the most part, taken from Caesar or Cicero, that the student may the more easily interpret them.

Part III. — Part III is designed for the last year of the school and consists of a series of forty lessons, of which Lessons XXV–XL are entirely devoted to practice in writing connected Latin. Each lesson from I–XXIV

consists of: 1. a definite assignment of syntax; 2. a definite special vocabulary; 3. an exercise for written translation consisting of a series of fifteen sentences developing the assigned principles of grammar and the special vocabulary; 4. a short passage of connected prose; 5. an exercise for oral translation. Part III is intended to review entirely the principles of Parts I and II, to extend the application of those principles, and to afford practice in the writing of connected Latin. The sentences of any given lesson are based for content and vocabulary on a certain portion of Caesar or Cicero, the entire series of lessons giving a complete summary of the content of the portions of those authors usually read in our schools. They are, however, so arranged as not to permit the pupil to turn to any given passage of Latin in the attempt to get material for the sentences.

Vocabulary.—The systematic development of vocabulary has been strangely neglected in the study of Latin in our schools, and in this book an attempt has been made to remedy that defect by the preparation of a special vocabulary for each lesson and by a carefully prepared general vocabulary. The vocabulary employed is based on the analysis of the vocabulary of high school Latin made by Professor Lodge of Teachers College,[1] and very few words have been admitted that are not found in his selected list, which is developed on the principle of the relative frequency of occurrence of words in the Latin read in high schools.

[1] "Vocabulary of High School Latin," Gonzalez Lodge, Teachers College, Columbia University, 1907.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ELEMENTS OF SYNTAX

	PAGE
AGREEMENT	1
PRONOUNS	4
SYNTAX OF NOUNS	10
Nominative Case	10
Vocative Case	11
Accusative Case	11
Dative Case	14
Genitive Case	18
Ablative Case	26
Constructions of Time	33
Constructions of Place	37
SYNTAX OF VERBS	40
Tenses	40
Questions	42
Wishes	44
Potential Subjunctive	45
Hortatory Subjunctive	46
Imperative Mood	46
Sequence of Tenses	47
Indirect Questions	50
Purpose Clauses	50
Result Clauses	51
Substantive Clauses	52
Purpose	52
Result	53
After Verbs of Fearing	54
After Verbs of Preventing, etc.	54
After Verbs of Doubting	55
Characteristic Clauses	55
Temporal Clauses	56
Causal Clauses	60
Conditional Sentences	61

PAGE

Clauses of Comparison 65
Concessive Clauses 65
Infinitives 67
Indirect Discourse 70
Conditions in Indirect Discourse 73
Participles 77
Ablative Absolute 78
Gerund and Gerundive 81
Passive Periphrastic Conjugation 83
Supines 84

CONJUNCTIONS 84

ORDER OF WORDS 86

PART III. EXERCISES

LESSON

I. PRONOUNS; ADJECTIVES; AGREEMENT . . . 91
II. TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE 93
III. THE ACCUSATIVE CASE 96
IV. QUESTIONS: Direct and Indirect; SEQUENCE OF TENSES 99
V. PURPOSE AND RESULT CLAUSES 102
VI. THE DATIVE CASE 105
VII. CLAUSES AFTER VERBS OF FEARING, PREVENTING, DOUBTING, ETC.; CHARACTERISTIC CLAUSES . . 108
VIII. GERUND; GERUNDIVE; PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS; SUPINE 110
IX. THE GENITIVE CASE 113
X. THE GENITIVE CASE (*continued*) 116
XI. CONDITIONS 119
XII. WISHES; POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE; CONDITIONAL CLAUSES OF COMPARISON 122
XIII. COMMANDS; ENTREATIES; PROHIBITIONS . . . 125
XIV. THE INFINITIVE 127
XV. THE INFINITIVE (*concluded*); INDIRECT DISCOURSE . 130
XVI. THE ABLATIVE CASE 133
XVII. THE ABLATIVE CASE (*continued*) 136
XVIII. CONDITIONS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE; DEPENDENT UNREAL CONDITIONS 139

LESSON		PAGE
XIX.	TEMPORAL CLAUSES: **Cum**-Temporal; **Postquam**, etc.	141
XX.	TEMPORAL CLAUSES (*continued*): **Dum**-Clauses; **Priusquam** and **Antequam**; Proviso	144
XXI.	PARTICIPLES; ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE	147
XXII.	EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE	150
XXIII.	CAUSAL AND CONCESSIVE CLAUSES	152
XXIV.	EXPRESSIONS AND CONSTRUCTIONS OF TIME	156
XXV.	CONNECTED PROSE	158
XXVI.	CONNECTED PROSE	159
XXVII.	CONNECTED PROSE	160
XXVIII.	CONNECTED PROSE	161
XXIX.	CONNECTED PROSE	162
XXX.	CONNECTED PROSE	163
XXXI.	CONNECTED PROSE	164
XXXII.	CONNECTED PROSE	165
XXXIII.	CONNECTED PROSE	166
XXXIV.	CONNECTED PROSE	167
XXXV.	CONNECTED PROSE	168
XXXVI.	CONNECTED PROSE	169
XXXVII.	CONNECTED PROSE	171
XXXVIII.	CONNECTED PROSE	172
XXXIX.	CONNECTED PROSE	173
XL.	CONNECTED PROSE	175
SPECIAL VOCABULARIES FOR PART III		177
REFERENCES TO GRAMMARS FOR PART III		196
GENERAL VOCABULARY		205
INDEX		257

HIGH SCHOOL COURSE IN LATIN COMPOSITION

ELEMENTS OF SYNTAX

AGREEMENT

1. Adjectives. — When an adjective modifies two or more nouns of different gender, the agreement is as follows:

a. An attributive adjective agrees with the nearest noun.

***Multae* urbēs, oppida, vīcīque,** *many cities, towns, and villages.*

b. A predicate adjective is plural, and when the subjects denote:

1. Living beings, the adjective is masculine.

Pater et māter *salvī* sunt, *father and mother are safe.*

2. Things, the adjective is neuter.

Urbēs, oppida, vīcīque *tūta* sunt, *the cities, towns, and villages are safe.*

3. Living beings and things, the adjective agrees with the nearest.

Bona, fortūnae, coniugēs, līberīque *salvī* sunt, *property, fortunes, wives, and children are safe.*

2. An adjective modifying an infinitive or a clause is neuter.

***Difficile* est hōc dē omnibus cōnfīrmāre** (A. VII, 15), *it is difficult to assert this of all.*

3. Some adjectives are frequently used as substantives.

The masculine denotes persons; the neuter, things. Some of the commonest are:

omnēs, *all (men), everybody*	**omnia**, *all (things), everything*
bonī, *the good, good people*	**malī**, *the bad, bad people*
māiōrēs, *ancestors*	**minōrēs**, *descendants*

Likewise demonstrative, possessive, and proper adjectives. *E.g.*,

nostrī, *our (men)*	**mea**, *my (property)*
hī, *these (men)*	**Rōmānī**, *the Romans*

4. Nouns. — An appositive agrees with the noun with which it is in apposition in case, and, when possible, in gender and number.

Nerviī, *gēns* Galliae, *the Nervii, a people of Gaul.*
Gāia, *serva*, *Gaia, a (female) slave.*

5. A noun in apposition with two or more nouns is plural.

Marius et Valerius, *cōnsulēs*, *Marius and Valerius, the consuls.*

6. An appositive is sometimes best translated by a clause of time, cause, etc.

Mihi *cōnsulī dēsignātō* īnsidiātus es (I Cat. V, 11), *you plotted against me (when I was) the consul elect.*

7. Predicate Noun. — A predicate noun follows the same rules as an appositive. Cf. 4–6.

Marius et Valerius *cōnsulēs* fuērunt, *Marius and Valerius were consuls.*

8. Verbs. — A verb agrees with its subject in number and person. In compound forms of the verb the participle agrees in gender and case.

Audit cōpiās *missās* esse, *he hears that troops have been sent.*

9. A collective noun regularly takes a verb in the singular; but a plural verb may be employed when the individuals are thought of.

Multitūdō *adest* (IV Cat. VII, 16), *a great number is present.*
Multitūdō lapidēs *coniciēbant* (B. G. II, 6), *a great number were throwing stones.*

10. Two or more singular subjects usually take a verb in the plural, but when connected by disjunctive conjunctions (**aut . . . aut, nec . . . nec,** etc.), or when considered as a whole, the verb is usually singular.

Marius et Valerius cōnsulēs *sunt*, *Marius and Valerius are consuls.*
Nec pater nec fīlius *vēnit*, *neither father nor son came.*
Senātus populusque Rōmānus hōc *iussit*, *the senate and the Roman people ordered this.*

11. When the subjects are of different persons, the verb is regularly plural and the first person is preferred to the second or third, and the second person to the third.

Ego et tū et ille id *faciēmus*, *you, he, and I will do this.*
Tū et Mārcus id *fēcistis*, *you and Marcus did this.*

12. Relative Pronouns. — A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, but its case depends on its construction in its own clause.

Eōrum *quōs* mīsimus (L. M. XXII, 65), *of those whom we have sent.*
Vōs *quī ignōrātis* (III Cat. I, 3), *you who do not know.*

13. When a relative has two or more antecedents it follows the rules for the agreement of the predicate adjective. Cf. 1 *b*.

Puer et puella *quōs* vīdimus, *the boy and girl whom we saw.*

14. A relative usually agrees with an appositive in its own clause rather than with an antecedent of different gender or number.

Rhodanus *quod* est *flūmen* Galliae, *the Rhone which is a river of Gaul.*

15. When the antecedent is a clause or a phrase, **id quod, quod,** or **quae rēs** is used.

Id quod **stultissimum est, certāre cum ūsūrīs** (II Cat. VIII, 18), *to struggle with the interest, which is very foolish.*

PRONOUNS

16. Personal Pronouns. — The personal pronouns are not expressed as subjects except for emphasis or to avoid ambiguity.

Ego **tibi crēdō,** ***tū*** **mihi nōn crēdis,** *I believe you,* (but) *you do not believe me.*

Dīcō ***mē*** **ventūrum esse,** *I say that I will come.*

17. Nostrī and **vestrī** are regularly used as objective genitives, **nostrum** and **vestrum** as partitive genitives.

Habētis ducem memorem ***vestrī*** (IV Cat. IX, 19), *you have a leader mindful of you.*

Ūnus quisque ***nostrum*** (I Cat. I, 2), *each one of us.*

18. The genitive of the personal or reflexive pronoun is never used to denote possession. The possessive adjectives **meus, tuus, noster, vester, suus,** must be used instead.

Pater ***meus,*** *my father.*

19. Reflexives. — Reflexive pronouns and adjectives are those which refer back to the subject. The reflexive pronouns of the first and second persons are the personal pronouns. The reflexive of the third person is **suī.** The corresponding possessive adjectives are **meus, tuus, noster, vester, suus.**

Mē mea**que dēdō,** *I surrender myself and my (property).*
Tē tua**que dēdis,** *you surrender yourself and your (property).*
Sē sua**que dēdit,** *he surrenders himself and his (property).*
Nōs nostra**que dēdimus,** *we surrender ourselves and our (property).*
Vōs vestra**que dēditis,** *you surrender yourselves and your (property).*
Sē sua**que dēdunt,** *they surrender themselves and their (property).*

20. Pronouns of the Third Person. — **Is, ea, id,** is regu-

larly used for the third personal pronoun when not reflexive. Likewise the possessive adjective **suus** is reflexive only, and in all other relations the possessive genitive of **is** is regularly employed; **ēius**, *his, her, its;* **eōrum** (m. and n.), **eārum** (f.), *their.*

Fīlium *suum* sēcum dūxit, *he took his (own) son with him.*
Fīlium *ēius* nōbīscum dūximus, *we took his son with us.*
***Sē* dēfendit,** *he defends himself.* ***Eum* dēfendunt,** *they defend him.*
In *suōs* fīnīs *sē* cōnferunt, *they betake themselves into their country.*
In fīnīs *eōrum eōs* sequēmur, *we shall follow them into their country.*

21. Direct and Indirect Reflexives. — In the subordinate clause of a complex sentence the reflexive may be direct or indirect.

22. When referring to the subject of its own clause it is called a "direct reflexive."

Eum ōrāvī ut *sē suaque* dēfenderet, *I besought him to defend himself and his (property).*

23. When referring to the subject of the main verb it is called an "indirect reflexive." This indirect reflexive can be used only when the subordinate clause expresses the thought of the subject of the main verb and is, therefore, in general confined to clauses in indirect discourse, indirect questions, purpose clauses, after verbs of fearing, doubting, etc., and in subjunctive causal clauses. Otherwise **is, ille,** or **ipse** must be used.

Mē ōrāvit, ut *sē suaque* dēfenderem, *he besought me to defend him and his (property).*

24. The reflexive must not be used in a main clause referring to the subject of the subordinate verb.

Sī id fēcerit, amīcī *eius* gaudēbunt, *if he does this, his friends will rejoice.*

25. **Ipse** is sometimes used instead of a reflexive to avoid ambiguity.

Cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē *ipsīus* dīligentiā dēspērārent (B. G. I, 40), *why should they despair of their own courage or of his care?*

26. **Reciprocal Pronouns.** — The reciprocal relation (*one another, each other, together*, etc.) is expressed by **inter nōs, inter vōs, inter sē.**

Hī omnēs *inter sē* differunt (B. G. I, 1), *all these differ from each other (among themselves).*

Cohortātī *inter sē* (B. G. IV, 25), *encouraging each other.*
***Inter sē* collocūtī** (B. G. IV, 30), *conferring together.*

27. **Possessives.** — The possessive is frequently omitted when not necessary for clearness.

Fīlium mīsī, *I have sent my son.*
Fīlium *tuum* mīsī, *I have sent your son.*

28. The possessive adjectives are regularly used instead of the genitive of the personal and reflexive pronouns to express possession. Cf. 18.

29. Remember that the possessive adjective must agree in gender, number, and case with the noun modified and not with the noun or pronoun to which it refers.

30. **Demonstrative Pronouns and Adjectives.** — **Hīc**, *this*, is used of that which is near the speaker in place, time, or thought, and hence is called the demonstrative of the first person.

Hīc* locus, *this place (the place where the speaker is standing).

31. **Iste**, *that* (of yours), is used of that which concerns the person addressed, and hence is called the demonstrative of the second person.

Furor *iste* tuus (I Cat. I, 1), *that madness of yours.*

32. **Iste** sometimes implies contempt or antagonism.

Sī *istīus* tēla vītēmus (I Cat. I, 2), *if we avoid the weapons of that scoundrel.*

33. **Ille**, *that*, is used of that which is remote from the speaker, and is called the demonstrative of the third person. It is frequently used to denote a change of subject.

Cum *illō* rēge (L. M. III, 8), *with that king.*

34. **Ille** is frequently used to refer to that which is well known or to something or some person just mentioned.

Māgnus *ille* Alexander (A. X, 24), *that (famous) Alexander the Great.*

35. **Ille** and **hīc** are sometimes used in contrasts where **ille** = *the former* and **hīc** = *the latter.*

Caesar et Pompēius māgnī imperātōrēs fuērunt; *ille hunc* vīcit, *Caesar and Pompey were great generals; the former conquered the latter.*

36. **Is**, *this, that*, is not so definite as **hīc** or **ille**, and is especially used: (1) to replace the missing third personal pronoun; and (2) as the antecedent of the relative pronoun. *E.g.*, **Is quī**, *a man who.*

***Eum* interfēcērunt,** *they killed him.*

Quī cēnset *eōs* quī haec dēlēre cōnātī sunt (IV. Cat. IV, 7), *who recommends that men who have attempted to destroy these (buildings).*

37. **Īdem**, *the same*, frequently represents an English phrase; *also, likewise, at the same time*, etc.

Dīxī ego *īdem* (I Cat. III, 7), *I also said.*

38. **Ipse**, *self*, frequently is best translated by *even, very, mere, in person, of his own accord*, etc.

***Ipsī* illī philosophī** (A. XI, 26), *even those* (those very) *philosophers.*
Illō *ipsō* diē (I Cat. III, 7), *on that very day.*
***Ipse* adest,** *he is present in person.*
***Ipse* id fēcit,** *he did this of his own accord.*

39. Relative Pronouns and Adjectives. — For the agreement of the relative, cf. 12–15.

40. The relative is never omitted in Latin as it often is in English.

Epistulam *quam* scrīpsistī, *the letter (which) you wrote.*

41. The relative is frequently used for closer connection at the beginning of an independent clause where the English employs a demonstrative.

***Quae* cum ita sint,** *since these things are so.*

42. A relative clause is sometimes used in Latin to express some other construction in English.

(Is) quī aquilam ferēbat (B. G. IV, 25), *the standard bearer.*

43. Note the correlatives:

īdem . . . quī, *the same . . . as*	**tot . . . quot,** *as many . . . as*
tālis . . . quālis, *such . . . as*	**totiēns . . . quotiēns,** *as often . . . as*
tantus . . . quantus, *as much . . . as*	

44. Interrogative Pronouns and Adjectives. — **Quis, quid,** *who? what?* is the commonest interrogative pronoun. The corresponding adjective is **quī, quae, quod** (declined like the relative). Do not confuse the pronoun and adjective.

***Quid* vidēs,** *what do you see?* (Pronoun.)
***Quod* oppidum vidēs,** *what town do you see?* (Adjective.)

45. Uter, utra, utrum, *which* (of two)? is used only when two persons or things are considered.

***Uter* cōnsulum,** *which of the* (two) *consuls?*
***Quis* cīvium,** *which of the citizens?* (any number).

46. Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives. — The commonest indefinites are:

aliquis (aliquī), *some (one), any (one)*	**quīdam**, *(a) certain*
quis (quī), *some (one), any (one)*	**quīvīs**, *any one you will*
quisquam, *any one (at all)*	**quīlibet**, *any one you please*
quispiam, *some one, any one*	**quisque**, *each (one)*

47. **Aliquis, aliquid,** are the pronoun forms; **aliquī, aliqua, aliquod,** the adjective forms.

aliquid, *anything* **aliquod oppidum**, *any town*

48. **Quis, quid,** are pronoun forms; **quī, qua, quod,** adjective forms. The indefinite **quis** is used only after **sī, nisi, nē, num,** where it replaces **aliquis.**

Sī *quis* est (II Cat. II, 3), *if there is any one.*

49. **Quisquam, quicquam,** has no plural nor separate form for the feminine singular. It is used only in negative sentences or in sentences implying a negative. The corresponding adjective is **ūllus.**

Neque *quicquam* aliud adsecūtī sunt (L. M. XXIII, 67), *nor did they accomplish anything else.*

***Quisquam* dubitābit** (L. M. XV, 45), *will any one doubt?* (implying that no one will doubt).

Neque *ūlla* vīs reperiētur (IV Cat. X, 22), *nor will any power be found.*

50. **Quispiam,** *some one,* is rarer than **aliquis,** but has about the same meaning.

Quaeret *quispiam* (A. VII, 15), *some one will ask.*

51. **Quīdam,** *(a) certain,* indicates a person not named, but known to the speaker or writer. It is the most definite of all the indefinite pronouns.

***Quīdam* ex mīlitibus** (B. G. I, 42), *a certain one of the soldiers.*

52. **Quīvīs** and **quīlibet** are less common than some of the other indefinites and are used chiefly in affirmative clauses.

Quamvīs **fortūnam patī** (B. G. II, 31), *to endure any fortune whatsoever.*

53. **Quisque,** *each,* is not often used in the plural and is usually postpositive.

Ūnus *quisque* nostrum (I Cat I, 2), *each one of us.*

54. **Quisque** is frequently used with the superlative and is somewhat idiomatic in that use.

Optimus quisque maximē glōriā dūcitur (A. XI, 26), *all good men are greatly influenced by glory;* or, more idiomatically, *the better a man is, the more he is influenced by glory.*

55. **Quisque** = *each* (of several), **uterque** = *each* (of two), *both.*

56. Note the following idiomatic uses of **alius** and **alter**:

alius . . . alius, *one . . . another*
aliī . . . aliī, *some . . . others*
ūnus / **alter** . . . **alter,** *the one . . . the other* (of two)
alius . . . aliud, *one, one thing . . . another, another*
aliī . . . aliam in partem, *some in one direction, others in another*

Duae fīliae hārum (erant); *altera* occīsa, *altera* capta est (B. G. I, 53), *there were two daughters of these women; one was killed, the other captured.*

SYNTAX OF NOUNS

Nominative Case

57. The nominative case is used only as the subject of a finite verb, in apposition with the subject, or as a predicate noun.

58. The nominative is used of the predicate noun after some verbs, especially **sum** and passive verbs of naming, choosing, etc. Cf. 67–69.

sum, *be*	**fīō**, *become, be made*	**appellor**, *be called*
videor, *seem*	**creor**, *be elected*	**nōminor**, *be called*
dīcor, *be said*	**habeor**, *be considered*	**maneō**, *remain*
dēligor, *be chosen*		

Cicerō *cōnsul* creātus est, *Cicero was elected consul.*

Vocative Case

59. The vocative case is used only in addressing a person by name or title. It usually follows one or more words of the sentence.

Quō usque tandem abūtēre, *Catilīna*, patientiā nostrā (I Cat. I, 1), *how long, pray, (O) Catiline, will you abuse our patience?*

a. The vocative of **meus, mea, meum** is **mī, mea, meum.**

Accusative Case

60. Direct Object. — Many verbs which in English appear intransitive and require a preposition, are transitive in Latin and take a direct object in the accusative. Some of the commonest are:

doleō, *grieve (for* or *at)*	**horreō, horrēscō**, *shudder (at)*
lūgeō, *mourn (for)*	**rīdeō**, *laugh (at)*
maereō, *mourn (for)*	**mīror**, *wonder (at)*
spērō, *hope (for)*	**dēspērō**,[1] *despair (of)*

queror, *complain (of)*

Ariovistī *crūdēlitātem* horrent (B. G. I, 32), *they shudder at the cruelty of Ariovistus.*

***Honōrēs* dēspērant** (II Cat. IX, 19), *they despair of the honors.*

61. Also such verbs as **parō**, *prepare (for)*; **quaerō**, *search (for)* = *seek;* **exspectō**, *wait (for)*; etc.

***Bellum* parāre**, *to prepare (for) war.*

---

[1] **Dēspērō** sometimes takes **dē** + ablative.

62. With Compound Verbs. — Many verbs compounded with **circum, trāns, per, praeter,** and some with **ad, in,** and **sub,** take the accusative.

Flūmen **trānsīre,** *to cross the river.*
Quī circumstant ***senātum*** **(I Cat. VIII, 21),** *who surround the senate.*

63. If the simple verb is transitive two accusatives may be found.

Exercitum **(trāns)** ***flūmen*** **trādūcere,** *to lead the army across the river.*

NOTE. The preposition may be repeated. Cf. preceding example.

64. Cognate Accusative. — An intransitive verb sometimes takes the accusative of a noun which has the same general meaning as the verb. This is called the Cognate Accusative and is usually modified by an adjective.

Bonam ***vītam vīvere,*** *to live a good life.*
Malum ***somnium somniāre,*** *to dream a bad dream.*

65. Inner Object. — A neuter pronoun or adjective is frequently used to define or modify the noun idea implied in the verb.

Eōs ***hōc moneō*** **(II Cat. IX, 20),** *I give them this advice* (warn them this).

Quī ***omnia praeclāra atque ēgregia sentiunt*** **(III Cat. II, 5),** *who entertain all the noble and excellent sentiments* (who feel, etc.).

66. Note the phrases:

Multum	**posse** or **valēre**	*to have great power, to be very powerful,* etc.
Plūs		*to have more power, to be more powerful,* etc.
Plūrimum		*to have the most power, to be the most powerful,* etc.
Minus		*to have less power, to be less powerful,* etc.
Minimum		*to have the least power, to be the least powerful,* etc.

67. Verbs of *naming, choosing, making, showing, appoint-*

ing, and the like may take two accusatives of the same person or thing.

Quem Stātōrem **nōminā̆mus** (I Cat. XIII, 33), *whom we call the Stayer.*

68. Some of the most common of these are:

appellō, *call*	**creō**, *elect, create*	**putō**, *think*
nōminō, *name, call*	**faciō**, *make*	**habeō**, *hold, consider*
dīcō, *appoint, call*	**reddō**, *make, render*	(passive supplied by **fīō**)

69. With the passive of these verbs the double nominative is used. Cf. 58.

70. Verbs of *asking*, *demanding*, *teaching*, and **cēlō**, *conceal*, may take two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing.

Hōs sententiam **rogō** (I Cat. IV, 9), *I ask these men their opinion.*

Caesar ***Aeduōs frūmentum*** **flagitābat** (B. G. I, 16), *Caesar kept demanding grain of the Aedui.*

71. But instead of the accusative of the person, with verbs of asking and demanding, the ablative with a preposition is the common construction.

72. Learn carefully the following verbs with their meanings and constructions:

rogō, *ask for*, usually takes the accusative of the thing and **ab** with the ablative of the person. But two accusatives are regularly used when the thing is a neuter pronoun and in the phrase, **aliquem sententiam rogāre**, *to ask any one for his opinion.*

petō, *ask for*, *seek*, *beg*, always takes **ab** + ablative of the person.

postulō, *demand*, always takes **ab** + ablative of the person.

pōscō, *demand*, usually takes **ab** + ablative of the person.

ōrō, *beg*, *ask for*, usually takes **ab** + ablative of the person.

quaerō, *ask*, *inquire*, always takes **ab**, **ex**, or **dē** + ablative of the person.

doceō, *teach* and **cēlō**, *conceal*, take two accusatives, or the accusative of the person and **dē** + ablative of the thing.

Auxilium ā Caesare **petere** (B. G. I, 32), *to beg aid of Caesar.*

Quaesīvit ***ā Gallīs*** (III Cat. V, 11), *he inquired of the Gauls.*

73. Extent. — Extent of space and duration of time. Cf. 169, 199.

74. Extent in degree is expressed by the accusative of neuter pronouns and adjectives. Likewise **partem** may be so used. Here belong such adverbial accusatives as: **nihil,** *not at all;* **multum,** *much, a great deal,* etc.

Neque *multum* frūmentō sed *maximam partem* lacte et pecore vīvunt (B. G. IV, 1), *nor do they live much on grain but for the most part on milk and meat.*

75. Limit of Motion. — Cf. 188, 190, 194, 195, 198.

76. Subject of an Infinitive. — Cf. 324–325, 333 ff.

77. Exclamations. — The accusative is sometimes used in exclamations.

Ō fortūnātam rem pūblicam (II Cat. IV, 7), *O fortunate republic!*

Dative Case

78. Indirect Object. — The indirect object is put in the dative case.

***Tibi* librum dedī,** *I gave the book to you, I gave you the book.*

a. Some verbs, especially **dōnō,** *present,* and **circumdō,** *surround, place around,* take: (1) a direct object and an indirect object; or (2) a direct object and an ablative of means.

***Praedam mīlitibus* dōnat** (B. G. VII, 11), *he presents the booty to the soldiers.*

***Mīlitēs praedā* dōnat,** *he presents the soldiers with the booty.*

***Castrīs vāllum* circumdat,** *he places a rampart around the camp.* Cf. 83.

***Castra vāllō* circumdat,** *he surrounds the camp with a rampart.*

79. Dative with Special Verbs. — The dative of the in-

direct object is used with most verbs and expressions signifying *favor*, *help*, *please*, *trust*, *believe*, *persuade*, *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *envy*, *threaten*, *pardon*, *spare*, *indulge*, and the like.

80. Some of the most common of these verbs are:

faveō, *favor*	**persuādeō**, *persuade*
studeō, *desire*	**noceō**, *harm*
crēdō, *believe*	**parcō**, *spare*
cōnsulō, *consult for*[1]	**indulgeō**, *indulge*
cēdō, **concēdō**, *yield*	**īrāscor**, *be angry at*
imperō, *command, order*	**pāreō**, *obey*
minor, *threaten*	**serviō**, *serve*
minitor, *threaten*	**invideō**, *envy*
fīdō, *trust*	**resistō**, *resist*
cōnfīdō, *trust*	**placeō**, *please*
diffīdō, *distrust*	**īgnōscō**, *pardon*

Mīlitēs *imperātōrī* **pārent**, *the soldiers obey the general.*

Quibus **populus Rōmānus īgnōvisset** (B. G. I, 45), *whom the Roman people had pardoned.*

81. The following verbs are common exceptions to the rule in 79–80, and take the accusative case:

iubeō, *order, command* **dēlectō**, *please* **iuvō**, **adiuvō**, *help*

Fortīs **fortūna adiuvat**, *fortune favors the brave.*

82. In the passive of the verbs mentioned in 79–80 the verb must be used impersonally, the dative of the indirect object being retained, and the subject of the active becoming an ablative of agent or means.

ACT. ***Mihi*** **persuādet**, *he is persuading me.*

PASS. ***Mihi ab eō*** **persuādētur**, *I am being persuaded by him (it is being persuaded to me by him).*

ACT. **Hae rēs *patriae*** **nocent**, *these things harm the country.*

PASS. ***Patriae hīs rēbus*** **nocētur**, *the country is harmed by these things (it is harmed to the country by these things).*

[1] With the accusative **cōnsulō** = *I ask the advice of, I consult.*

83. Dative with Compound Verbs. — The dative of the indirect object is used with many verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super,** and sometimes **circum.**

Quī *huic urbī* praesident (IV Cat. II, 3), *who guard this city.*
Bellum *hostibus* īnferre, *to make war on the enemy.*

84. When the verbs mentioned in 83 are transitive in Latin, a direct object in the accusative may also be found.

***Lēgātum legiōnī* praefēcit,** *he put a lieutenant in charge of the legion.*

85. Dative of the Possessor. — The dative is used with **esse** and **deesse** to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject.

***Urbī* satis praesidī est,** *the city has sufficient protection (to the city is sufficient)* = **Urbs satis praesidī habet.**

86. The dative of the possessor is used in a statement of possession, and is regularly equivalent to a construction with **habeō.** The genitive of possession shows incidentally the possessor. Note carefully the difference.

GEN. *The boy's horse is black,* ***Puerī* equus est niger.**
DAT. *The boy has a black horse,* { ***Puerō* equus niger est.** / **Puer equum nigrum habet.**

87. Dative of Reference or Interest. — The dative is employed to denote the person interested.

Quid *sibi* vellet (B. G. I, 44), *what did he want (for himself)?*
***Quibus* locus sēdēsque parārentur** (B. G. I, 31), *for whom a place and dwellings were being prepared.*
***Tibi* extorta est ista sīca dē manibus** (I Cat. VI, 16), *that dagger has been wrested from your hands (from the hands for you).*

88. Dative of Agent. — The dative is regularly used

with the passive periphrastic conjugation to denote the person upon whom the obligation rests. Cf. 384, 388.

***Tibi* id faciendum est,** *you must do this.*

89. When the employment of the dative of agent would bring two datives together in such a way as to cause ambiguity the ablative of agent is used instead.

Quibus est *ā vōbīs* cōnsulendum (L. M. II, 6), *for whom you must consult.*

90. Dative of Purpose or Service. — The dative may be used to denote that for which something serves.

Nostrī hunc locum *castrīs* dēlēgerant (B. G. II, 18), *our men had chosen this place for a camp.*

91. Frequently a dative of reference or interest accompanies the dative of purpose, forming a construction called "the double dative."

***Gallīs māgnō impedīmentō* erat** (B. G. I, 25), *it was a great hindrance to the Gauls.*

92. Dative with Adjectives. — Many adjectives of *nearness*, *fitness*, *likeness*, *friendliness*, and their opposites take the dative. Some of the most common are:

FITNESS:
idōneus, *suitable for*
aptus, *suitable for*
accommodātus, *suited to*
ūtilis, *useful to*
inūtilis, *useless*

LIKENESS:
similis, *like*
dissimilis, *unlike*
pār, *equal to*
aequus, *equal to*
inīquus, *unequal to*

NEARNESS:
proximus, *next to, nearest*
fīnitimus, *neighboring to*

FRIENDLINESS, ETC.:
amīcus, *friendly*
inimīcus, *unfriendly, hostile*
cārus, *dear*
īnfēstus, *hostile to*
grātus, *pleasing*
adversus, *opposed to, facing*
contrārius, *opposed to, opposite*

***Castrīs* idōneum locum dēlēgit** (B. G. I, 49), *he chose a place suitable for a camp.*

***Helvētiīs* erat amīcus** (B. G. I, 9), *he was friendly to the Helvetians.*

93. **Aptus, accommodātus, ūtilis,** and **inūtilis** commonly take **ad** with the accusative.

Ad pūgnam **inūtilēs** (B. G. II, 16), *useless for battle.*
Compare: **Inūtilēs** ***bellō*** (B. G. VII, 78), *useless for war*

94. **Proprior** and **proximus** sometimes take the accusative.
Proximī ***Rhēnum*** (B. G. I, 54), *nearest the Rhine.*

95. Many of these adjectives are sometimes used as substantives and are then construed with the genitive. So, especially, **fīnitimī,** *neighbors;* **amīcus,** *friend;* **inimīcus,** (a personal) *enemy.*

96. **Similis** usually takes the genitive of persons and regularly takes the genitive of personal pronouns and **vērum.**

Nēmō tam ***tuī*** **similis** (I Cat. II, 5), *no one so like you.*
Catilīnae (Gen.) **similēs,** "*the likes of Catiline,*" *those like Catiline.*

Genitive Case

97. **Genitive of Possession.** — The genitive of possession denotes the person to whom anything belongs or from whom it originates.

Puerī **equus,** *the boy's horse.*
Ōrātiōnēs ***Cicerōnis,*** *Cicero's speeches.*

98. Instead of the possessive genitive of the personal pronouns the corresponding possessive adjectives are always used. Sometimes other possessive genitives are replaced by derivative adjectives.

Pater ***meus,*** *my father.* Never **Pater** ***meī.*** Cf. 18, 28.
Virtūtēs ***imperātōriae*** (L. M. XI, 29), *the qualities of a general* = **Virtūtēs imperātōris.**
Ut potius in ***suīs*** **quam in** ***aliēnīs*** **fīnibus dēcertārent** (B. G. II, 10), *that they might fight it out in their own land rather than in the land of others.*

99. In such expressions as *the city of Rome*, etc., the Latin commonly uses an appositive instead of the genitive.

Urbs *Rōma*, *the city (of) Rome.*

100. A substantive infinitive or clause is sometimes modified by a genitive of possession or a possessive adjective.

Est igitur *hūmānitātis vestrae* prohibēre (L. M. VII, 18), *it is, therefore, (a requirement) of your kindness to protect.*
***Vestrum* est prōvidēre** (III Cat. XII, 27), *it is your (duty) to provide.*

101. Genitive of Description or Quality. — The genitive is used for description or quality, but only when the noun of description is modified.

Hominēs *māgnae virtūtis* (B. G. II, 15), *men of great bravery.* But ***Fortis* vir et *sapiēns* homō** (L. M. VIII, 20), *a man of bravery and (a man) of wisdom, a brave and wise man.*

102. The genitive of description is regularly used with numerals as a **genitive of measure**, and in the phrases: **ēius modī, hūius modī, cūius modī**, etc.

Mūrus *sēdecim pedum* (B. G. I, 8), *a sixteen-foot wall.*
***Ēius modī* hominēs** (L. M. V, 13), *such men.*

103. The ablative of description (140) is more common than the genitive except under the conditions mentioned in 102. In most cases either the genitive or the ablative may be used.

Vir *māgnae virtūtis* = Vir *māgnā virtūte*.

104. Partitive Genitive. — The genitive denoting the whole of which a part is considered is found with the following classes of words:

1. Nouns and pronouns denoting a part, including **alius, alter**, etc.

2. Numerals, comparatives, and superlatives.

3. Neuter pronouns and adjectives when used as nouns.

4. Adverbs of quantity and place.

Pars ***urbis***, *a part of the city.*
Quārum ūnam (B. G. I, 1), *one of which.*
Plūs ***fīrmāmentī*** (L. M. IV, 10), *more strength.*

Hōrum fortissimī sunt Belgae (B. G. I, 1), *of these the bravest are the Belgians.*
Quid ***malī*** aut ***sceleris*** (II Cat. IV, 7), *what* (of) *evil or crime?*
Ubinam ***gentium*** (I Cat. IV, 9), *where in the world* (= in what part of the world)?

105. The partitive genitive is especially common with the following:

multum, *much*	plūs, *more*	satis, *enough, sufficient*
tantum, *so (as) much*	quantum, *how (as) much*	nihil, *nothing, no*
paulum, *a little*	minus, *less*	minimum, *least*
quid, *what?*	aliquid, *any (thing)*	quid, *any (thing)*

106. With cardinal numerals (especially **ūnus**), and with some other words, especially **quīdam** and **aliquis**, the ablative with **dē** or **ex** is commonly used instead of the partitive genitive.

Ūnus ***ē fīliīs*** (B. G. I, 26), *one of (his) sons.*
Quīdam ***ex mīlitibus*** (B. G. I, 42), *a certain one of the soldiers.*
Paucī ***dē nostrīs*** (B. G. I, 15), *a few of our men.*

107. When the whole and not a part is considered, the partitive genitive must not be used.

Nōs omnēs, *all of us, we all.* ***Haec*** omnia, *all (of) these things.*
Id omne (L. M. XXIV, 71), *all (of) that.*

108. Some words, which in English are used as nouns with a partitive genitive, in Latin are employed as adjec-

tives and agree with the noun. Some of the commonest of these are:

summus, *the top of*	**īmus (īnfimus)**, *the bottom of*
prīmus, *the first part of*	**extrēmus**, *the end of*
medius, *the middle of*	**reliquus**, *the rest of*

In ***colle mediō*** (B. G. I, 24), *halfway up the hill* (*on the middle of the hill*).
In ***summō colle*** (B. G. II, 26), *on the top of the hill.*
Extrēmā hieme . . . mediā aestāte (L. M. XII, 35), *at the end of the winter . . . in the middle of summer.*
Prīma nocte (B. G. I, 27), *during the first part of the night.*

109. Predicate Genitive. — A genitive of possession, a possessive adjective, or a genitive of description may be used in the predicate.

Illae omnēs dissēnsiōnēs ***ēius modī*** **fuērunt** (III Cat. X, 25), *all those quarrels were such . . .*
Neque ***suum*** **iūdicium sed** ***imperātōris*** **esse exīstimāvisse** (B. G. I, 41), *and* (they said) *they did not consider the decision theirs, but the general's.*

110. Objective Genitive. — Note the connection of thought in the following:

Patriam amat, *he loves his native land.*
Amor patriae, *love of his native land, patriotism.*
Amantissimus patriae, *very fond of his native land, patriotic.*

Rēgnum cupit, *he desires power.*
Rēgnī cupiditās (B. G. I, 2), *desire for power.*
Rēgnī cupidus, *desirous of power.*

It will be noted that the direct object of the verb becomes a genitive when dependent on the cognate noun or adjective. The objective genitive is used of the person or thing toward which an action or feeling is directed.

111. Objective Genitive with Nouns. — Nouns of action, agency, or feeling take the genitive case.

Amor *reī pūblicae* (IV Cat. VII, 15), *love of the state, patriotism.*
Ēvocātor *servōrum* (I Cat. XI, 27), *the summoner of slaves.*
Patientia *famis* (I Cat. X, 26), *endurance of hunger.*

112. Sometimes a preposition, usually **in** or **ergā**, is used instead of the objective genitive.

***Ergā vōs* amor** (III Cat. I, 1), *love toward* (of) *you.*
Voluntās *in sē* (B. G. I, 19), *good will toward him.*
Voluntās *ergā mē* (IV Cat. I, 1), *good will toward me.*

113. Genitive with Adjectives. — Adjectives of *desire, knowledge, memory, fullness, power, sharing*, and their opposites, together with participles in **-ns** when used as adjectives, govern the genitive.

114. Some of the commonest are:

avidus, *eager, greedy*	**immemor**, *forgetful, unmindful*
cupidus, *eager, desirous*	**oblītus**, *forgetful*
studiōsus, *fond of, devoted to*	**plēnus**, *full*
cōnscius, *conscious, aware*	**inops**, *destitute*
perītus, *experienced, skilled*	**potēns**, *controlling, ruling*
imperītus, *inexperienced, unskilled*	**particeps**, *sharing, participating*
prūdēns, *knowing, skilled*	**socius**, *associating in, sharing*
memor, *mindful, remembering*	**expers**, *having no part in, free from*

Appetentēs *glōriae* atque avidī *laudis* (L. M. III, 7), *desirous for glory and eager for praise.*
***Reī mīlitāris* perītissimus** (B. G. I, 21), *well skilled in military affairs.*
Memorem *vestrī*, oblītum *suī* (IV Cat. IX, 19), *mindful of you, forgetful of himself.*
Plēnissimum *nāvium* (L. M. XII, 33), *very full of ships.*
Amantissimōs *reī pūblicae* virōs (III Cat. II, 5), *very patriotic men.* Cf. **Quī amāvit ūnicē patriam** (III Cat. V, 10).

115. Refertus takes the genitive of persons, but the ablative of things.

Refertō *praedōnum* marī (L. M. XI, 31), *on a sea full of pirates.*
Referta *dīvitiīs* (L. M. XVIII, 55), *full of (filled with) riches.*

116. Genitive with Verbs of Memory, etc. — The construction with verbs of remembering and forgetting is as follows:

1. **Meminī**, *remember, be mindful of, be regardful of*, takes the genitive.

Meminisse Elissae (Aen. IV, 335), *to remember Elissa.*

2. **Meminī**, *remember, keep in mind, recall*, takes the accusative, especially of neuter pronouns and adjectives.

Haec **ōlim meminisse iuvābit** (Aen. I, 203), *some time it will give us pleasure to recall these things.*

Praeterita **meminisse** (L. M. XVI, 47), *to recall the past.*

3. **Reminīscor** follows the same rules as **meminī**, but is less common.

Reminīscerētur et *veteris incommodī* populī Rōmānī et *prīstinae virtūtis* Helvētiōrum (B. G. I, 13), *let him remember the former disaster of the Roman people and the previous valor of the Helvetians.*

4. **Recordor**, *recollect, recall*, regularly takes the accusative of things and **dē** with the ablative of persons.

Recordāminī *omnīs dissēnsiōnēs* (III Cat. X, 24), *recall all the quarrels.*

Dē tē **recordor**, *I remember about you.*

5. **Oblīvīscor**, *forget*, usually takes the genitive, but of neuter pronouns and adjectives the accusative is regularly used.

Oblīvīscere *caedis* atque *incendiōrum* (I Cat. III, 6), *forget slaughter and conflagrations.*

Haec **oblītus eram**, *I had forgotten those things.*

117. Genitive with Verbs of Reminding. — **Admoneō, commoneō**, and **commonefaciō** sometimes take the genitive of the thing, but more commonly **dē** with the ablative. The person reminded is put in the accusative. **Moneō**

regularly takes **dē** with the ablative. With all of these verbs a neuter pronoun is used as an inner object. Cf. 65.

Dē quō **vōs admonuī** (L. M. XV, 45), *of which I reminded you.*
Eōs hōc **moneō** (II Cat. IX, 20), *I give them this advice.*

118. Genitive with Verbs of Emotion. — The following impersonal verbs take the accusative of the person who feels, and the genitive of the object or cause of that feeling:

miseret, *it pities*	**taedet,** *it tires, it disgusts*
pudet, *it shames*	**piget,** *it irks, it tires*
paenitet, *it repents*	**pertaesum est,** *it tires*

Mē meōrum cōnsiliōrum **nunquam paenitēbit** (IV Cat. X, 20), *I shall never repent my plans (it will never repent me of my plans).*
Mē ēius **miseret,** *I pity him (it pities me of him).*

119. An infinitive or substantive clause or a neuter pronoun may be used as the subject of these verbs.

Nōn pudēbat magistrātūs in hunc locum ***escendere*** (L. M. XVIII, 55), *the officers were not ashamed to ascend to this place.*

120. Misereor, *pity*, takes the genitive; **miseror** and **commiseror,** the accusative.

Miserēre ***sorōris*** (Aen. IV, 435), *have pity on your sister.*
Sortem **miserātus** ***inīquam*** (Aen. VI, 332), *having pity on his unjust lot.*

121. Genitive with Verbs of Accusing, etc. — Verbs of *accusing, convicting, condemning*, take the genitive of the charge or penalty.

Eum ***prōditiōnis*** **accūsāvit,** *he accused him of treason.*
Mē ***inertiae nequitiae*****que condemnō** (I Cat. II, 4), *I condemn myself for my inactivity and inefficiency.*

a. Such verbs are: **accūsō,** *accuse;* **damnō** and **condemnō,** *condemn.*

122. Genitive of Indefinite Value. — Verbs of *rating* and

buying take the genitive of the indefinite value with the following:

māgnī, *much*	**plūris**, *more*	**plūrimī, maximī**, *most*
parvī, *little*	**minōris**, *less*	**minimī**, *least*
tantī, *so much*	**quantī**, *how much*	**nihilī**, *naught*

The commonest verbs used with this construction are:

aestimō, *value*	**putō**, *reckon*	**habeō**, *hold, consider*
dūcō, *consider*	**faciō**, *make*	**sum**, *be (worth)*

Omnia perīcula *parvī* esse dūcenda (A. VI, 14), *(that) all dangers were to be considered of little importance.*

Est mihi *tantī* (II Cat. VII, 15), *it is well worth my while (it is to me of so much importance).* Cf. **Operae pretium est** (IV Cat. VIII, 16), *it is worth while.*

123. Definite value or price is expressed by the ablative. Cf. 163.

124. **Interest**, *it is to the interest of*, takes the genitive of the person or thing. **Rēfert** is seldom used with this construction.

***Reī pūblicae* interest** (B. G. II, 5), *it is to the interest of the state.*

a. Instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns, the ablative singular feminine of the corresponding possessive adjective is regularly used with **interest** and **rēfert**.

Ego videō quid *meā* intersit (IV Cat. V, 9), *I see what is to my interest.*

125. **Potior**, *get possession of*, regularly takes the genitive in the expression **rērum potīrī**, *become master of the situation.* Otherwise the ablative is regularly used. Cf. 165–166.

***Rērum* potīrī volunt** (II Cat. IX, 19), *they wish to get control of affairs.*
But: ***Oppidō* potiuntur**, *they get possession of the town.*

126. **Causā** and **gratiā**, *for the sake of, for the purpose*

of, take the genitive case, which always precedes. This construction expresses purpose (not cause), and is especially common with the gerund or gerundive. Cf. 381.

Reī frūmentāriae **causā** (B. G. I, 39), *for the sake of the grain supply.*

Bellandī **causā** (B. G. IV, 1), *for the purpose of waging war.*

The Ablative Case

127. Means. — The means or instrument of an action is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Litterīs **certior factus est** (B. G. II, 1), *he was informed by dispatches.*

Gladiīs **māgnam partem eōrum interfēcērunt** (B. G. II, 23), *they killed a large part of them with swords.*

128. Agency. — The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by **ā** or **ab** with the ablative.

Ab explōrātōribus **certior factus est** (B. G. I, 21), *he was informed by scouts.*

129. The ablative of agent is used only of persons or of something personified; the ablative of means is used only of things.

130. The *person through whom* is expressed by **per** with the accusative.

Per explōrātōrēs **certior factus est** (B. G. I, 12), *he was informed through scouts.*

Per explōrātōrēs **cōgnōvit**, *he learned through scouts.*

131. Manner. — Manner is expressed by the ablative with **cum**, but **cum** may be omitted if the noun is modified.

Cum dīligentiā, *with care, carefully.*

Māgnā (cum) dīligentiā, *with great care, very carefully.*

NOTE. The position of **cum** is commonly between the adjective and its noun.

132. The simple ablative of some nouns is regularly used to denote manner, and some of these are used as adverbs. Some of the commonest are: **cāsū**, *by chance;* **dolō**, *deceitfully;* **iūre**, *justly;* **iniūriā**, *unjustly;* **lēge**, *legally;* **meritō**, *deservedly;* **ōrdine**, *duly;* **vī**, *forcibly;* **voluntāte**, *with the consent of;* **vulgō**, *commonly.*

Meritō **ac** ***iūre*** **laudantur** (III Cat. VI, 14), *they are deservedly and justly praised.*

133. Accompaniment. — Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with **cum.**

Cum legiōne duodecimā (B. G. III, 1), *with the twelfth legion.*

Cum is sometimes omitted in military expressions, especially in the phrase, **omnibus cōpiis** (B. G. II, 19). But the use of **cum** is always possible.

134. Words of participation and contention take the ablative of accompaniment.

Cum Germānīs **contendunt** (B. G. I, 1), *they contend with the Germans.*

135. Cause. — Cause may be expressed by the ablative, with or without a preposition (**ab, ex, dē**).

Quā rē, *wherefore (because of which thing).*
Quā dē causā (B. G. I, 1), *for which reason, therefore.*
Virtūte suā **laudātur,** *he is praised for his bravery.*

136. Cause may also be expressed by **propter** or **ob** with the accusative.

Quam ob rem, *wherefore.* **Propter hōc,** *because of this.*

137. The ablative of cause is used with the adjectives **laetus,** *glad;* **frētus,** *relying on;* **contentus,** *content with.*

Hūmānīs cōnsiliīs **frētus** (II Cat. XIII, 29), *depending on human plans.*

Nostrā caede **contentus** (I Cat. III, 7), *content with our death.*

138. Accordance. — The ablative of accordance is used to denote that in accordance with which anything is done or is true.

Suīs mōribus (B. G. I, 4), *in accordance with their customs.*
Meā sententiā (L. M. XIX, 58), *in my opinion.*

139. The following are some of the commonest words used in this construction. Each requires a modifier:

mōre	**iussū**	**rogātū**
mōribus	**iniussū**	**hortātū**
cōnsuētūdine	**sententiā**	**cōnsiliō**

140. Description (Quality). — The ablative may be used to denote quality or for description when the describing noun is modified. Cf. 101–103.

Hominēs *inimīcō animō* (B. G. I, 7), *men of hostile intent.*
Summā virtūte **adulēscēns** (B. G. I, 47), *a young man of the greatest valor.* But: *A man of valor*, **vir fortis.**

141. The ablative is more common than the genitive in this construction except as indicated in 101–103.

142. Specification. — The ablative without a preposition is used to denote that in respect to which something is true.

Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs *virtūte* **praecēdunt** (B. G. I, 1), *the Helvetians surpass the rest of the Gauls in bravery.*

143. Note the following ablatives of specification which are very common: **numerō,** *in number;* **nōmine,** *in name (by name);* **nātū,** *in birth (by birth).*

144. Do not confuse the ablative of specification with the ablative of description or quality. (140.)

Mōns māgnus altitūdine, *a mountain great in height.* (Specification.)

Mōns māgnā altitūdine (B. G. I, 38), *a mountain of great height.* (Description.)

145. **Dignus** and **indignus** take an ablative of specification.

Dignus ***cōgnitiōne*** (A. III, 5), *worthy of acquaintance.*

146. **Separation.** — Separation is commonly expressed by the ablative with **ab, ex, dē.** So always of persons and where actual motion is involved.

Quī prōvinciam ***ab Helvētiīs*** **dīvidit** (B. G. I, 2), *which separates the province from the Helvetians.*

Ēgredere ***ex urbe*** (I Cat. V, 10), *depart from the city.*

147. But many verbs of *abstaining, excluding, removing, relieving,* etc., together with some compounds of **ab, ex,** and **dē,** are used either with or without a preposition.

Hostēs ***ā pūgnā*** **prohibēre** (B. G. IV, 34), *to keep the enemy from battle.*
Eōs ***pūgnā*** **prohibēre** (B. G. IV, 11), *to keep them from battle.*

Proeliō **excēdēbant** (B. G. III, 4), *they were withdrawing from battle.*
Ex proeliō **excēdunt** (B. G. IV, 33), *they are withdrawing from battle.*

148. Some of the commonest verbs which may be used without a preposition are:

abstineō, *withhold from*	**dēsistō,** *desist from*
ēgredior, *depart from, go out*	**excēdō,** *go out*
expellō, *drive out*	**interclūdō,** *shut off*
moveō (locō, senātū), *move, remove*	**prohibeō,** *prevent from, keep from*

solvō (lēge, lēgibus, religiōne), *release from, free from*

149. The following very commonly take the ablative without a preposition:

līberō,[1] *free from* **nūdō**, *bare* **prīvō**, *deprive of* **spoliō**, *strip of, rob*
mē abdicō, *resign*

And the adjectives:

līber, *free from* **nūdus**, *stripped of* **vacuus**, *empty of, free from*

Ut Ubiōs *obsidiōne* līberāret (B. G. IV, 19), *that he might free the Boii from a siege.*

Ubi mūrus *dēfēnsōribus* nūdātus est (B. G. II, 6), *when the wall had been bared of defenders.*

150. Origin. — Particles signifying birth and origin, especially **nātus**, *born of*, and **ortus**, *descended from*, take the ablative usually without a preposition.

Iove* nātus et *Māiā (Aen. III, 56), *the son of Jupiter and Maia.*

151. But **ab** or **ex** is frequently used of remote ancestors.

***Ex Cimbrīs Teutonīsque* prōgnātī** (B. G. II, 29), *descended from the Cimbri and Teutons.*

152. Material. — The ablative is used with **ex** to denote the material.

Scūta *ex cortice* facta (B. G. II, 33), *shields made (out) of bark.*
Nāvēs factae *ex rōbore* (B. G. III, 13), *boats made (out) of oak.*

153. With verbs of *plenty* and *want* the ablative is used. So particularly verbs of filling take the ablative of means.

Eā (sīcā) **carēre nōn potes** (I Cat. VI, 16), *you cannot do without that (dagger).*

***Multitūdine* hostium castra complērī** (B. G. II, 24), *(that) the camp was filled with a multitude of the enemy.*

[1] **Ab** must be used of persons.

154. **Egeō** and **indigeō** may also take the genitive.

Nē quis *auxilī* egeat (B. G. VI, 11), *that no one might lack aid.*

155. **Opus est** or **ūsus est,** *there is need,* takes the dative of the person who wants and the ablative of the thing wanted. Neuter pronouns may be used as subjects. **Ūsus est** is much rarer than **opus est.**

***Mihi auxiliō tuō* opus est,** *I need your aid.*

Sī *quid* ipsī ā Caesare opus esset (B. G. I, 34), *if he himself wanted anything from Caesar.*

156. Of verbs the infinitive or the ablative singular neuter of the perfect passive participle may be used.

Sī quid opus *factō* esset (B. G. I, 42), *if there should be any need of action.*

157. **Comparison.** — When **quam** is used after a comparative, the second noun takes the same case as the noun with which it is compared, that is, **quam** is followed by the same case as precedes it. But when **quam** would be followed by the nominative or accusative case, it may be omitted. Then the second noun is put in the ablative case.

Hīc mōns altior est *quam ille*,
Hīc mōns altior est *illō*, } *this mountain is higher than that.*

158. But the ablative cannot replace **quam** with the genitive, dative, or ablative.

Exercitus Pompēiī māior fuit *quam Caesaris*, *Pompey's army was larger than Caesar's.* Here the ablative construction would mean that the army was larger than Caesar!

159. With **plūs, minus, amplius,** and **longius, quam** is often omitted without changing the construction.

Cum ipsī nōn amplius *octingentōs equitēs* habērent (B. G. IV, 12), *although they themselves did not have more than eight hundred horsemen.*

160. Degree or Measure of Difference. — With comparatives and words implying comparison, the ablative is used to denote the measure or degree of difference.

Turris tribus pedibus altior est quam *mūrus*, *the tower is three feet higher than the wall.*

Intellegēs *multō* mē vigilāre ācrius (Cat I. IV, 8), *you will realize that I watch much more sharply (more sharply by much).*

***Mīlibus* passuum quattuor et vīgintī abesse** (B. G. I, 41), *was twenty-four miles distant (distant by twenty-four miles).*

Paucīs* ante *diēbus (B. G. I, 18), *a few days before (before by a few days).*

161. Some of the commonest words thus used are:

multō, *much;* **paulō,** *a little;* **eō, hōc,** *this much, so;* and words of time and space.

162. Note especially the expressions:

Quantō . . . tantō
Quō . . . hōc } with comparatives, *the . . . the . . .*

***Quō* māior vīs aquae . . . *hōc* artius tenērentur** (B. G. IV, 17), (so that) *the greater the force of the water . . . the more tightly they were held.*

***Quantō* erat gravior oppūgnātiō, *tantō* crēbriōrēs litterae mittēbantur** (B. G. V, 45), *the more severe the siege was, the more numerous were the dispatches sent.*

163. Price. — Definite price is expressed by the ablative.

Domum sestertium *tribus mīlibus* ēmit, *he bought the house for three thousand sesterces.*

164. Remember that indefinite value is expressed by the genitive. Cf. 122.

165. Ablative with *ūtor*, etc. — The deponents **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vēscor,** and their compounds take the ablative.

Quō usque tandem abūtēre *nostrā patientiā* (I Cat. I, 1), *how long, pray, will you abuse our patience?*

166. **Potior** sometimes takes the genitive, regularly in the phrase, **rērum potīrī,** *to become master of the situation.* Cf. 125.

Constructions of Time

167. **Time when** is expressed by the ablative case.

Diē quartō **pervēnērunt** (B. G. I, 26), *on the fourth day they arrived.*

168. **Time within which** is expressed by the ablative case.

Diēbus quīndecim **pervēnit** (B. G. II, 2), *within fifteen days he arrived.*

169. **Time how long (extent of time)** is expressed by the accusative case.

Dum *paucōs diēs* morātur (B. G. I, 39), *while he delayed for a few days.*

170. In some expressions where the English emphasizes the place, the Latin uses the ablative of time.

Omnibus Gallicīs bellīs (B. G. IV, 20), *in all the Gallic wars.*
Quī bellō Cassiānō dux fuerat (B. G. I, 13), *who had been leader in the war with Cassius.*

171. *About*, with words of time, may be expressed by **dē.**

Dē tertiā vigiliā (B. G. I, 12), *about the third watch.*

172. *Toward*, *until*, with words of time, may be expressed by **ad** or **sub** with the accusative.

Ad multam noctem (B. G. I, 26), *until late at night.*
Sub vesperum (B. G. II, 33), *toward evening.*
Ad vesperum (B. G. I, 26), *until evening.*

173. *Ago* may be expressed by **abhinc** with the accusative. Cf. also 174.

Abhinc multōs annōs, *many years ago.*

174. *Before* and *after* are expressed by **ante** and **post** with an ablative of degree of difference.

Paucīs ante annīs or **paucīs annīs ante**, *a few years before* (*ago*).
Paucīs post annīs or **paucīs annīs post**, *a few years after*.

Also :

Ante paucōs annōs. **Post paucōs annōs.**

Note the change of construction when the **ante** or **post** precedes.

175. The Roman day was divided into twelve hours (**hōrae**) between sunrise and sunset. Thus, six to seven A.M. was approximately **prīma hōra**, etc. The night was divided into four watches (**vigiliae**) of about three hours each, from approximately six P.M. to six A.M. Thus, six to seven P.M. was about **prīma vigilia**, etc.

176. The Roman Month. — The names of the Roman months are as follows :

Iānuārius, -a, -um[1]	**Māius, -a, -um**	**September, -bris, -bre**
Februārius, -a, -um	**Iūnius, -a, -um**	**Octōber, -bris, -bre**
Mārtius, -a, -um	**Quintīlis, -e (Iūlius)**	**November, -bris, -bre**
Aprīlis, -e	**Sextīlis, -e (Augustus)**	**December, -bris, -bre**

Previous to 46 B.C., March, May, July, and October had 31 days, February 28, and the others 29. In that year Julius Caesar reformed the calendar, giving each month the number of days which it has at present. Shortly afterward the name for July was changed from **Quintīlis** to **Jūlius**, and later that of August from **Sextīlis** to **Augustus**.

177. The Roman month had three separate points from which all other days were reckoned.

[1] The abbreviations are underlined. The names of the months are all adjectives.

The Calends, **Kalendae,** the first of the month.

The Nones, **Nōnae,** the fifth or seventh of the month.

The Ides, **Īdūs,** the thirteenth or fifteenth of the month.

In March, May, July, and October, the Nones fell on the seventh and the Ides on the fifteenth; in all other months the Nones on the fifth and the Ides on the thirteenth.

178. From these points all other dates were reckoned backward, counting the day from which and the day to which the reckoning is made. Thus, two days before the Nones according to our reckoning would be three days before the Nones according to the Roman reckoning.

179. The formulae for expressing Roman dates are:

1. On the Calends, Nones, or Ides — ablative plural.

E.g., **Nōnīs Septembribus,** *on the Nones of September* (September 5th).

2. On the day before the Calends, Nones, or Ides:

Prīdiē { **Kalendās** / **Nōnās** / **Īdūs** } (Acc. pl. fem. of the name of the month.)

E.g., **Prīdiē Īdūs Februāriās,** *February 12th.*

3. For all other dates:

Ante diem (ordinal modifying **diem**) { **Kalendās** / **Nōnās** / **Īdūs** } (Acc. pl. fem. of month.)

E.g., **Ante diem quīntum Kalendās Novembrīs,** *October 28th.*

180. To change English dates into Roman:

1. Between the first of the month and the Nones, or between the Nones and the Ides, add one to the date of the Nones or Ides and subtract the English day of the month. ***E.g.***,

Nov. 2: The Nones of November fall on the 5th. $5 + 1 - 2 = 4$.
Ante diem quārtum Nōnās Novembrīs.
Nov. 8: The Ides of November fall on the 13th. $13 + 1 - 8 = 6$.
Ante diem sextum Īdūs Novembrīs.

2. Between the Ides and the Calends, add two to the number of days in the month and subtract the English date. Of course the Calends will be those of the following month. *E.g.*,

Oct. 28: In October there are 31 days. $31 + 2 - 28 = 5$.
Ante diem quīntum Kalendās Novembrīs.

181. The phrases **prīdiē** and **ante diem,** etc., may be used after a preposition without any change taking place in the phrases. **Ex,** *from;* **in** or **usque ad,** *until.*

In ante diem quīntum Kalendās Novembrīs (I Cat. III, 7), *until October 28th.*

Ex ante diem tertium Nōnās Iūniās usque ad Prīdiē Kalendās Septembrīs, *from June 3d until August 31st.*

182. The Roman year is commonly expressed by the names of the consuls in the ablative absolute.

M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus (B. G. I, 2), (Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso being consuls) *in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso,* 61 B.C.

183. The year may also be reckoned from the year 753 B.C., the legendary date of the founding of Rome. For any date B.C., subtract the English date from 754; for any date A.D., add the English date to 753. The formula is:

Annō urbis conditae (ordinal numeral modifying **annō**) = A. U. C.
154 B.C. = **Annō urbis conditae sēscentēsimō.** $754 - 154 = 600$.
47 A.D. = **Annō urbis conditae octingentēsimō.** $753 + 47 = 800$.

184. The year may also be expressed according to the following formulae:

Annō ante Chrīstum nātum (ordinal numeral modifying **annō**) = B.C.
Annō Dominī (ordinal numeral modifying **annō**) = A.D.
63 B.C. = **Annō ante Chrīstum nātum sexāgēsimō tertiō.**
1900 A.D. = **Annō Dominī mīlēsimō nōngentēsimō.**

185. Caesar (B. G. I, 6) gives us a complete date as follows:

Is diēs erat ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlīs Lūciō Pīsōne Aulō Gabīniō cōnsulibus, *March 28th*, 58 *B.C.* But he abbreviates the date as follows: **a. d. V. Kal. Apr. L. Pīsōne, A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus.**

Constructions of Place

186. Place where is expressed by the ablative with **in** or some other preposition.

187. Place to which is expressed by the accusative with **ad** or **in.**

188. Place from which is expressed by the ablative with **ab, ex,** or **dē.**

189. Place Where. — Exceptions: **locō, locīs, parte, partibus, castrīs, dextrā** (**parte**), **sinistrā, laevā, terrā marīque, castrīs,** may omit **in.** Likewise nouns of place when modified by **tōtus, cūnctus,** or **omnis.**

Multīs locīs (B. G. III, 21), *in many places.* **Tōtīs castrīs** (B. G. I, 39), *in the whole camp.*

190. Place to Which. — **In** with the accusative implies actual entrance into a town, city, etc. **Ad** is more general and may signify general direction toward, to the borders of, etc.

In urbem, *into the city* (actual entrance implied).
Ad urbem, *to the city* (actual entrance not necessarily implied).

191. The construction of place-to-which regularly oc-

curs with verbs of motion; but verbs of placing, **pōnō, locō, conlocō, statuō, cōnstituō,** take **in** with the ablative.

Caesar exercitum in *hībernīs* conlocāvit, *Caesar stationed the army in winter quarters.*

192. Place from Which. — Note the difference in meaning of the prepositions:

ab, *from, away from*	**ā flūmine,** *away from the river*
ex, *from, out of*	**ex urbe,** *out of the city*
dē, *from, down from, away from*	**dē mūrō,** *down from the wall*

For the omission of the preposition with some verbs of abstaining, etc., cf. 147–149.

193. The endings of the locative case are as follows:

	Sing.	Plur.
Decl. I	-ae	-īs
Decl. II	-ī	-īs
Decl. III	-ī (-e)	-ibus

194. With names of towns and small islands and with **domus** and **rūs.**

a. Place where is expressed by the locative case.

b. Place to which is expressed by the accusative without a preposition.

c. Place from which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Rōmae, *at Rome*	**Pompēiīs,** *at Pompeii*
Rōmam, *to Rome*	**Pompēiōs,** *to Pompeii*
Rōmā, *from Rome*	**Pompēiīs,** *from Pompeii*
domī, *at home*	**rūrī,** *in the country*
domum, *home*	**rūs,** *into the country*
domō, *from home*	**rūre,** *from the country*

195. The general words, **urbs, oppidum, insula,** etc., require a preposition. Compare the following expressions:

in urbe, *in the city* **in urbe Rōmā,** *in the city of Rome* **Rōmae,** *in Rome*

in urbem, *into the city*	**in urbem Rōmam,** *into the city of Rome*	**Rōmam,** *to Rome*
ex urbe, *out of the city*	**ex urbe Rōmā,** *out of the city of Rome*	**Rōmā,** *from Rome*

196. The following locatives are also used to express place where:

humī, *on the ground*	**mīlitiae,** *abroad, in the field of war*
forīs, *out of doors*	**bellī,** *in war*

a. **Domī,** locative case, may be modified by a possessive adjective in **-ae.**

domī meae, *at my house*

197. *At the home* (*house*) *of* may be expressed by **apud.** Cf. French *chez.*

Fuistī *apud Laecam* (I Cat. IV, 9), *you were at the house of Laeca.*

198. General direction to or from the neighborhood of a city, etc., may be expressed by **ad,** *near, toward, to the neighborhood of,* and **ab,** *from the neighborhood of.*

Ad Rōmam, *near or toward Rome, to the neighborhood of Rome.*
Ā Rōmā, *from the vicinity of Rome.*

199. Extent of Space. — Extent of space is expressed by the accusative case.

Mūrus *decem pedēs* altus, *a wall sixteen feet high.*

The adjectives most commonly used with the accusative of extent of space are: **altus,** *high, deep;* **lātus,** *broad, wide;* **longus,** *long.*

200. Distance may be expressed by the accusative of extent, or, with **absum, distō,** etc., by the ablative of measure of difference.

Ab hīs castrīs oppidum aberat *mīlia* passuum octō (B. G. II, 6), *the town was eight miles distant from this camp.*

Ā nostrīs *mīlibus* passuum XXIV abesse (B. G. I. 41), *were twenty-four miles from our troops.*

SYNTAX OF VERBS

Tenses

201. Present Tense. — The present tense is used of actions going on in present time and in statements which are universally true.

202. The present tense modified by **iam diū, iam prīdem, iam dūdum, iam multōs annōs,** or **iam** with any expression of duration of time, is used of actions begun in the past but still continuing. In this use the Latin present tense is translated by the English present perfect tense.

Quod tē iam dūdum *hortor* (I Cat. V, 12), *as I for a long time have been urging* (and still do urge) *you* (to do).

203. Imperfect Tense. — The imperfect tense is used to express repeated, continued, or customary acts in past time, or to describe a state of affairs in past time.

Hōc faciēbam, *I was doing this, I used to do this.*
Hōc cotīdiē faciēbat, *every day he did this — used to do this.*

204. However, the imperfect tense is not used to express a single completed act merely because duration of time is involved.

Diū pūgnātum est, *the battle lasted a long time.*

Similarly, expressions containing definite numbers are used with the perfect instead of the imperfect.

Vīxit centum annōs, *he lived a hundred years.*

205. The imperfect tense modified by **iam diū,** etc. (202), is used of actions begun in the more remote past and continuing into the nearer past. It is translated by the English progressive pluperfect.

Quoniam iam multōs annōs Rōmae *habitābat,* *since he had now for many years been living at Rome* (and still lived there).

206. Perfect Tense. — The perfect is used of an act which took place at some point in past time.

Diē quārtō pervēnērunt (B. G. I, 26), *on the fourth day they arrived.*

207. The historical perfect is used in narrative writing and is frequently used side by side with the imperfect and pluperfect; the imperfect and pluperfect describing the circumstances attending the act, while the perfect relates the act itself.

Id (flūmen) Helvētiī *trānsībant*: . . . Caesar ad eam partem *pervēnit* quae nōndum flūmen *trānsierat* (B. G. I, 12), *this river the Helvetians were* (in the act of) *crossing: . . . Caesar came up to that part which had not yet crossed the river.*

208. The pure perfect emphasizes the present result of a past action and is equivalent to the English present perfect in *has* and *have*.

Tandem aliquandō L. Catilīnam ex urbe *ēiēcimus* (II Cat. I, 1), *at last we have driven Lucius Catiline out of the city.*

209. The following verb forms are pure perfect tenses in which the present result of the action is so prominent as to make the perfects equivalent to present tenses:

cōgnōvī *and* **nōvī**, *I have learned = I know*
cōnsuēvī, *I have become accustomed = I am accustomed*
meminī, *I have recalled = I remember*
ōdī, *I have come to hate = I hate*

210. In the same way the pluperfect of the above verbs is used as the equivalent of the imperfect or perfect tenses.

cōgnōveram, *I had learned = I knew*

211. Pluperfect Tense. — The pluperfect is used to express an action completed in past time before some other past action.

Caesar ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen *trānsierat* (B. G. I, 12), *Caesar came to that part which had not yet crossed the river.*

212. Future Tense. — The future tense is used of an action which is about to take place. To represent future time the Latin does not employ the present as the English frequently does, but the future, or even the future perfect.

Cum veniet (vēnerit), *when he comes* (*will have come*).

213. Future Perfect Tense. — The future perfect tense is used of a future action which will be completed before some other future action, and is especially common in subordinate clauses to express action prior to a future main verb.

Quod sī *fēcerit*, comprehendētur, *if he does this, he will be arrested.* (He will not be arrested until after he has done it.)

Questions

214. Ordinary questions in Latin take the indicative mood. When a question is not introduced by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, one of the words indicated in 215–217 may be used.

215. Nōnne may introduce the question when the speaker or writer wishes to show that an affirmative answer is anticipated.

***Nōnne* eum interficī iubēbis,** *will you not order him to be put to death?* (The answer *yes* is anticipated.)

216. Num may introduce the question when one wishes to show that a negative answer is anticipated.

***Num* eum interficī iubēbis,** *you will not order him to be put to death, will you?* (The answer *no* is anticipated.)

217. The enclitic **-ne** may introduce the question when one merely asks for information without indicating what

answer is anticipated. The enclitic is attached to the emphatic word (usually the verb), which is then placed first.

Iubēbis*ne* eum interficī, *will you order him to be put to death?*

218. Deliberative or Dubitative Questions. — Questions which indicate doubt or hesitation on the part of the speaker are put in the subjunctive, the present subjunctive for present time and the imperfect for past time.

Ēloquar an sileam (Aen. III, 39), *shall I speak or keep silence?*

219. Rhetorical Questions. — Questions which are asked for rhetorical effect, expressing the speaker's feeling of indignation, impossibility, absurdity, or emotion, are put in the subjunctive, the present for present time and the imperfect for past time. The implied answer to such questions is a negative statement.

Hōc vērō quis ferre *possit*, ēbriōsōs sobriīs īnsidiārī (II Cat. V, 10), *but who can endure this, that drunken men should plot against the sober?*

Hōc tantum bellum quis umquam *arbitrārētur* ab ūnō imperātōre cōnficī posse (L. M. XI, 31); *who would ever have supposed that so great a war could be completed by one general?*

220. Questions asked only for rhetorical effect sometimes have the indicative.

Quid ego hōsce hominēs *commemorō* (IV Cat. VIII, 16), *why am I mentioning these men?* (Cf. IV Cat. VII, 15.)

221. Double Questions. — Double questions are introduced as follows:

(*whether*) . . . *or*	**utrum**	**. . . an**
	-ne	**. . . an**
	—	**. . . an . . . an**

222. In double direct questions *or not* is expressed by

annōn. In double indirect questions, *or not* is expressed by **necne.**

Quaerō *utrum* is clēmēns *an* inhūmānissimus esse videātur (IV Cat. VI, 12), *I ask whether he would seem merciful or most inhuman.*

Fuistī in nocturnō conventū *annōn*, *were you present at that night meeting or not?*

Quaesīvī ā Catilīnā in nocturnō conventū fuisset *necne* (II Cat. VI, 13), I *asked Catiline whether he had been present at that night meeting or not.*

223. Answers.— The Latin has no exact equivalent for the English *yes* or *no.*

224. For *yes* the Latin repeats the emphatic word or words of the question, or uses one of the following expressions:

vērō, *truly;* **sānē,** *surely;* **etiam,** *even so;* **ita (est),** *so it is*

225. For *no* the Latin negatives the emphatic word or words of the question, or uses:

nōn, *no;* **nōn ita,** *not so;* **minimē (vērō),** *by no means, not at all*

Wishes

226. Wishes are expressed by the subjunctive and are usually introduced by **utinam,** *would that! O that!* etc. The negative is **nē.**

227. Wishes referring to the future which are possible of fulfillment take the present subjunctive. **Utinam** is not always necessary.

Utinam tibi istam mentem dī *duint* (= ***dent***) (I Cat. IX, 22), *would that the gods would give you that intention!*

228. Unfulfilled wishes referring to present time take the imperfect subjunctive and are regularly introduced by **utinam.**

Utinam virōrum fortium cōpiam tantam *habērētis* (L. M. X, 27), *would that you had so great a number of brave men!*

229. Unfulfilled wishes referring to past time take the pluperfect subjunctive and are regularly introduced by **utinam**.

Utinam ille omnīs sēcum suās cōpiās *ēdūxisset* (II Cat. II, 4), *would that he had taken out with him all his forces!*

230. **Velim,** *I would that!* or **mālim,** *I should prefer that!* may replace **utinam** in wishes referring to the future.

***Velim* hōs sēcum *ēdūcat*,** *I wish that he would take out these men with him!*

231. **Vellem,** *I would that!* or **māllem,** *I should prefer that!* may replace **utinam** in wishes referring to present or past time.

***Vellem* hōs sēcum *ēdūceret*,** *I would that he were taking these men out with him!*

Māllem* hōs sēcum *ēdūxisset (II Cat. III, 5), *I should prefer that he had taken out these men with him!*

Potential Subjunctive

232. The potential subjunctive may be used to indicate an action as possible, the present tense representing present or future time, the imperfect representing past time. This kind of subjunctive is restricted to the usages mentioned in 233 and 234. The negative is **nōn**.

233. The potential subjunctive may be used in a few phrases like the following:

***Quaerat* quispiam,** *some one may ask.*
***Dīcat* quispiam,** *some one may say.*

234. The potential subjunctive may be used in sentences

which may be regarded as the apodoses of ideal or unreal conditions. Cf. 303, 306–307.

Libenter haec cōram cum Q. Catulō *disputārem* (L. M. XXII, 66), *gladly would I discuss this face to face with Quintus Catulus* (if it were possible). Apodosis of a present unreal condition.

This is the commonest use of the potential subjunctive and includes:

a. The subjunctive of the indefinite second person singular, translated: *you, one, any one.*

Migrantēs *cernās* (Aen. IV, 401), *you (= any one) might see them moving about.*

b. The guarded form of statement in the subjunctives: **velim,** *I should like;* **nōlim,** *I should not be willing;* **mālim,** *I should prefer.*

235. Rhetorical questions may be classed as potential subjunctives. Cf. 219.

Hortatory Subjunctive

236. Entreaties and mild commands in the first and third persons are expressed by the present subjunctive. The negative is **nē**. This is sometimes called the "imperative subjunctive" and in the third person the "jussive subjunctive."

Exeant; proficīscantur (II Cat. IV, 6), *let them go away; let them depart.*
Optēmus . . . quam querāmur (II Cat. VII, 16), *let us hope rather than complain.*

Imperative Mood

237. Commands are expressed by the imperative mood.

238. Ordinary commands such as look to immediate fulfillment are expressed by the first (present) imperative. This is the common form.

Mūtā **iam istam mentem; mihi *crēde*; *oblīviscere*** **caedis et incendiōrum** (I Cat. III, 6), *change that intention of yours; believe me; forget about murder and burning.*

239. The second (future) imperative is used in such general and standing orders and directions as appear in laws, precepts, and prophecies. But the following verbs regularly use the second (future) imperative instead of the first (present).

sciō, *know*	**scītō,** *know* (sing.)	**scītōte,** *know* (plur.)
meminī, *remember*	**mentō,** *remember* (sing.)	**mentōte,** *remember* (plur.)

240. Prohibitions (Negative Commands). — Prohibitions are regularly expressed by **nōlī** (sing.), or **nōlīte** (plur.), *be unwilling, do not,* with the present infinitive. Negative commands are not expressed by **nē** or **nōn** with the imperative in classical prose.

Quā rē *nōlīte dubitāre* (L. M. XXIII, 68), *therefore do not hesitate.*

241. TABLE OF IMPERATIVE CONSTRUCTIONS

AFFIRMATIVE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. **laudem,** *let me praise*	**laudēmus,** *let us praise*
2. **laudā,** *praise* (thou)	**laudāte,** *praise* (ye)
3. **laudet,** *let him praise*	**laudent,** *let them praise*

NEGATIVE

1. **nē laudem,** *let me not praise*	**nē laudēmus,** *let us not praise*
2. **nōlī laudāre,** *do not praise*	**nōlīte laudāre,** *do not praise*
3. **nē laudet,** *let him not praise*	**nē laudent,** *let them not praise*

Sequence of Tenses

242. In the subordinate clause of a complex sentence the tense of a subjunctive is governed by the following rule, called the "sequence of tenses":

1. If the main verb expresses present or future time, the subordinate subjunctive is in the present or perfect. These tenses are called "primary" or "principal" tenses.

2. If the main verb expresses past time, the subordinate subjunctive is in the imperfect or pluperfect. These tenses are called "secondary" or "historical" tenses.

PRIMARY (PRINCIPAL) TENSES

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	Present
Future	Perfect
Future Perfect	

SECONDARY (HISTORICAL) TENSES

Imperfect	Imperfect
Perfect	Pluperfect
Pluperfect	

243. How to apply the Rule of Tense Sequence. — In primary sequence the present subjunctive is used to express action going on at the same time as the action of the main verb, or to express action which will happen after the time of the main verb.

Sciō quid *faciās*, *I know what you are doing.*

244. In primary sequence the perfect subjunctive is used to express action which is completed at the time of the action of the main verb.

Sciō quid *fēceris*, *I know what you have done (did).*

245. In secondary sequence the imperfect subjunctive is used to express an action going on at the same time as the action of the main verb, or which was to happen after the time of the main verb.

Sciēbam quid *facerēs*, *I knew what you were doing.*

246. In secondary sequence the pluperfect subjunctive is used to express an action completed at the time when the action of the main verb took place.

Sciēbam quid *fēcissēs*, *I knew what you had done.*

247. Exceptional Sequence. — The perfect tense is regularly a secondary tense and takes secondary sequence, yet sometimes primary sequence is used, especially in result clauses. Cf. 260.

Māiōrēs nostrī tam fortiter pūgnāvērunt ut hodiē līberī *sīmus*, *our ancestors fought so bravely that to-day we are free.*

248. A perfect infinitive or a dependent perfect subjunctive requires secondary sequence even when the main verb is primary.

Dīcit illās gentēs veritās esse nē Caesar *venīret*, *he says that those tribes feared that Caesar would come.*

Ab eō quaeram cūr mē monuerit ut *manērem*, *I shall ask him why he advised me to stay.*

249. A subjunctive dependent on an imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive follows secondary sequence. So especially in unreal conditions.

Sī ipsī haec neque attingere . . . possēmus, tamen ea mīrārī dēbērēmus, etiam cum in aliīs *vidērēmus* (A. VII, 17), *if we were not able to attain to these ourselves, still we ought to admire them when we see them in others.*

250. When a future perfect indicative or a perfect subjunctive is made a dependent subjunctive, it becomes:

1. In primary sequence a perfect subjunctive.
2. In secondary sequence a pluperfect subjunctive.

Lentulus, cum sē praetūrā *abdicāverit*, in cūstōdiam trādātur, *let Lentulus be consigned to prison when he has resigned his praetorship.*

Cēnsēbunt ut Lentulus, cum sē praetūrā *abdicāverit*, in cūstōdiam trādātur.

Cēnsuērunt ut Lentulus, cum sē praetūra *abdicāsset*, in cūstōdiam trāderētur (III Cat. VI, 14).

Indirect Questions

251. Indirect questions include all subordinate clauses introduced by an interrogative word. The mood is subjunctive and the tense is governed by the rule for sequence of tenses.

Quis *sim* sciēs; . . . cōgitā quem in locum *sīs prōgressus* (III Cat. V, 12), *who I am you will know; . . . consider how far you have gone.*

For the particles used in double questions, see 221–222.

252. When a subordinate clause in the subjunctive is to express time clearly future with reference to the main verb, the active periphrastic is used. This is particularly common in indirect questions.

Dīcam quid *factūrus sit*, *I shall tell what he is going to do, is about to do, intends to do.*

Dīxī quid *factūrus esset*, *I told what he was going to do, was about to do, intended to do.*

Purpose (Final) Clauses

253. Purpose (final) clauses are clauses which express the purpose of the action of the main verb. The mood is subjunctive and the tense present or imperfect, according to the rule for the sequence of tenses.

254. Pure purpose clauses are introduced by **ut**, *that*, or **nē**, *that . . . not.*

Lēgātōs mittunt *ut* pācem *petant*, *they send ambassadors to beg peace.*

Hōc fēcit *nē* urbs *dēlērētur*, *he did this that the city might not be destroyed.*

255. Relative clauses of purpose are introduced by a relative pronoun, adjective, or adverb.

Lēgātōs mittunt *quī* (= ***ut iī***) **pācem *petant,*** *they send ambassadors to (who may, that they may) beg peace.*

Reliquī neque *quō* sē *reciperent* neque *quem ad modum* sē *dēfenderent* habēbant (B. G. IV, 26), *the rest had neither any place to retreat to, nor any way to defend themselves.*

256. **Quō** is regularly used to introduce a purpose clause which contains a comparative.

Mīlitēs manipulōs laxāre iussit *quō* facilius gladiīs ūtī possent (B. G. II, 25), *he ordered the soldiers to open out the ranks so that they might be able to use their swords more easily.*

257. VARIOUS WAYS OF EXPRESSING PURPOSE

(1) **Lēgātōs mīsit ut pācem peterent** (254)
(2) **Lēgātōs mīsit quī pācem peterent** (255)
(3) **Lēgātōs pācis petendae causā mīsit** (381)
(4) **Lēgātōs ad pācem petendam mīsit** (381)
(5) **Lēgātōs pācem petītum mīsit** (390)

} *he sent ambassadors to seek peace.*

(6) **Explōrātōrēs speculandī causā mīsit** (381)
(7) **Explōrātōrēs ad speculandum mīsit** (381)

} *he sent scouts to spy.*

(8) **Equitātum suīs auxiliō mīsit** (90–91) { *he sent the cavalry to aid his men* (B. G. IV, 37).

N.B. Purpose must not be expressed by the infinitive in Latin.

Result (Consecutive Clauses)

258. Result (consecutive) clauses are subordinate clauses which express the result of the action of the main verb. The subjunctive mood is used.

259. Result clauses are introduced by **ut,** *that,* **ut . . . nōn,** *that . . . not,* or a relative. Frequently some correlative is found in the main clause, such as **tam, sīc, ita, tantus, tot,** etc.

Tanta erat hōrum celeritās *ut* equōrum cursum *adaequārent* (B. G. I, 48), *so great was their swiftness that they equaled the speed of the horses.*

Quoniam sunt ita multī *ut* carcer eōs capere *nōn possit* (II Cat. X, 22), *since they are so many that the prison cannot hold them.*

Quae īnsula tam parva fuit *quae* (= *ut ea*) nōn portūs suōs *dēfenderet* (L. M. XVIII, 54), *what island was so small that it did not defend its own harbors?*

a. *Without* governing a gerund in English may sometimes be translated by **ut . . . nōn** and a result clause in Latin.

Nōn possunt multī fortūnās āmittere *ut nōn* plūrēs sēcum in eandem *trahant* calamitātem (L. M. VII, 19), *many men cannot lose their fortunes without involving* (= *so that they do not involve*) *many others with them in the same misfortune.*

260. In result clauses the following exception to the rule for sequence of tenses is to be noted. The perfect subjunctive (more rarely the present) may be used after a main verb in a secondary tense to emphasize the present result of a past action. Cf. 247.

Substantive Clauses

261. A substantive clause is a clause which is used as a substantive; that is, as the subject or object of some verb, or in apposition with a noun or pronoun.

262. Substantive Purpose Clauses. — Substantive clauses introduced by **ut** or **nē** are used after many verbs and expressions of *command*, *entreaty*, *request*, and *exhortation*. Some of the commonest verbs taking this construction are:

rogō, *ask*	**imperō**, *command, order*	**cūrō**, *take care*
petō, *ask, beg*	**mandō**, *instruct, command*	**videō**, *see to it* [1]
postulō, *demand*	**praecipiō**, *instruct*	**prōvideō**, *see to it* [1]
pōscō, *demand*	**cēnseō**, *decree*	**negōtium dō**, *employ*
ōrō, *beg*	**dēcernō**, *decree*	**permittō**, *allow*
optō, *wish, beg*	**persuādeō**, *persuade* [1]	**moneō**, *advise* [1]
concēdō, *permit*	**hortor**, *urge*	**admoneō**, *advise, warn* [1]

[1] With a different meaning many of these verbs take indirect discourse.

Cīvitātī persuāsit *ut* dē fīnibus *exīrent* (B. G. I, 2), *he persuaded (the citizens of) the state to emigrate from their country.*

Postulāvit *nē* aut Aeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum *īnferret* (B. G. I, 43), *he demanded that he should not make war on the Aedui or their allies.*

263. **Iubeō,** *order;* **vetō,** *forbid;* **sinō,** *permit;* **cupiō,** *desire,* are exceptions and take the infinitive only. Cf. 331–332.

264. **Substantive Result Clauses.** — Substantive clauses introduced by **ut** or **ut . . . nōn** are used after many verbs and expressions to denote the accomplishment of some result. Some of the commonest of the verbs are:

faciō,
efficiō,
perficiō, } *bring it about, make*
fit, *it happens, the result is*
accidit, *it happens*
contingit, *it happens*
attingit, *it happens*
ēvenit, *the outcome is*
additur, *added to this is the fact*
accēdit, *there is the additional fact, added to this is the fact*
sequitur, *it follows*
cōnsequitur, *it follows*
restat, *it remains*
reliquum est, *it remains*
mōs est, *it is the custom*
iūs est, *it is right, it is the law*

Fēcērunt *ut* cōnsimilis fugae profectiō *vidērētur* (B. G. II, 11), *they made their departure seem like flight.*

Accēdēbat *ut . . . nihil* saxa *timērent* (B. G. III, 13), *added to this was the fact that they feared the rocks not at all.*

265. Negative result clauses and negative purpose clauses differ greatly in the use of introductory particles. Study the following table:

	NEGATIVE PURPOSE	NEGATIVE RESULT
that . . . not	**nē**	**ut . . . nōn**
that . . . no one	**nē quis**	**ut . . . nēmō**
that . . . nothing	**nē quid**	**ut . . . nihil**
that . . . no (Adj.)	**nē quī (qua, quod)**	**ut . . . nūllus, -a, -um**
that . . . never	**nē umquam**	**ut . . . numquam**

Dēcrēvit senātus ut cōnsul vidēret ***nē quid*** rēs pūblica dētrīmentī caperet (I Cat. II, 4), *the senate decreed that the consul should see to it that the state suffered no harm.* (Purpose.)

Cōnsul effēcit ***ut nihil*** rēs pūblica dētrīmentī caperet, *the consul brought it to pass that the state suffered no harm.* (Result.)

266. Substantive Clauses with Verbs of Fearing. — Substantive clauses used with verbs and other expressions of fearing take the subjunctive introduced by **nē**, *that*, or **ut**, *that . . . not.*

Quod verērentur ***nē*** ad eōs exercitus noster ***addūcerētur*** (B. G. II, 1), *because they feared that our army would be led against them.*

Quī verērī videntur ***ut habeam*** satis praesidī (IV Cat. VII, 14), *who seem to fear that I shall not have sufficient forces.*

267. Nē . . . nōn replaces **ut** when:

a. The verb of fearing is negatived.

b. The negative goes with some particular word.

Nōn verentur ***nē*** id facere ***nōn possit***, *they do not fear that he will be unable to do this.*

268. Verbs of fearing when meaning *afraid to* take the infinitive. Cf. 329.

Verētur 'Rōmae ***manēre***, *he is afraid to stay in Rome.*

269. Clauses Dependent on Verbs of Hindering, etc. — Verbs and expressions of *hindering*, *preventing*, and *refusing* govern subordinate clauses in the subjunctive. The subordinate clauses are introduced:

a. By **nē** or **quōminus** when the main verb is in the affirmative.

b. By **quīn** or **quōminus** when the main verb is negative.

Hōs multitūdinem dēterrēre ***nē*** frūmentum ***cōnferant*** (B. G. I, 17), (that) *these men prevent the people from getting the grain together.*

Germānī retinērī ***nōn*** poterant ***quīn*** tēla in nostrōs ***conicerent*** (B. G. I, 47), *the Germans could not be restrained from hurling javelins at our men.*

(Nāvēs) quae ventō tenēbantur ***quōminus*** in eundem portum venīre ***possent*** (B. G. IV, 22), *which were prevented by the wind from being able to reach the same harbor.*

Neque recūsātūrōs ***quōminus*** sub illōrum imperiō ***essent*** (B. G. I, 31), *nor would they refuse to be under their power.*

270. Some of the commonest verbs thus used are:

impediō,	*hinder, prevent, deter*	teneō, *keep* (from)
dēterreō,		retineō, *restrain*
obstō,		recūsō, *refuse*

271. But **prohibeō** regularly takes the present infinitive.

Quī Teutonōs intrā fīnēs ***ingredī*** prohibuerint (B. G. II, 4), *who prevented the Teutons from entering their country.*

272. Clauses Dependent on Verbs of Doubting. — Negative verbs and expressions of doubting are followed by the subjunctive introduced by **quīn**.

Nōn dubium erat ***quīn*** Helvētiī plūrimum ***possent*** (B. G. I, 3), *there was no doubt that the Helvetians were the most powerful.*

273. When **dubitō** means hesitate, it is followed by the infinitive.

Dubitās, Catilīna, ***abīre*** (I Cat. VIII, 20), *do you hesitate, Catiline, to go away?*

Characteristic Clauses (Clauses of Tendency)

274. Relative clauses which express some characteristic of the antecedent of the relative are called "characteristic clauses" and have their verbs in the subjunctive. Characteristic clauses tell not what thing, but what kind of thing, is meant.

Tempestās coörta est quae nostrās nāvēs ***frangeret,*** *a storm came up which* (such as) *wrecked our ships.*

275. Characteristic clauses are especially common after the following expressions:

1. **Dignus est quī . . .**, *he is worthy to . . .*; **indignus est quī . . .**, *he is unworthy to . . .*; **idōneus est quī . . .**, *he is suitable to . . .*

2. **Ūnus est quī . . .**, *he is the only one who . . .*; **sōlus est quī . . .**, *he is the only one who . . .*

3. Phrases where the relative's antecedent is indefinite: *e.g.*,

Sunt quī . . ., *there are some who . . .*
Est quī . . ., *there is some one who . . .*
Quis est quī . . ., *who is there who . . .*
Nēmō est quī . . ., *there is no one who . . .*
Nihil est quod . . ., *there is nothing which . . .*

4. **Ēius modī quī . . .**, *of such a sort as to . . .*; **is est quī . . .**, *he is such a man as to . . .*

Nōn erit *idōneus quī* ad bellum Asiāticum *mittātur* (L. M. XXIII, 66), *he will not be a suitable man to be sent to the war in Asia.*

Ūnus* erat *quī* addūcī nōn *posset (B. G. I, 31), *he was the only one who could not be persuaded.*

Sunt *quī dīcant* (II Cat. VI, 12), *there are some who say.*

Quid* est *quod* in hāc urbe tē dēlectāre *possit (I Cat. VI, 13), *what is there which can please you in this city?*

Illae dissēnsiōnēs erant *ēius modī quae* ad commutandem rem pūblicam *pertinērent* (III Cat. X, 25), *those disturbances were of such a character as to aim at a revolution.*

276. Frequently relative clauses of characteristic are hardly to be distinguished from relative result clauses. Compare the last example above with the following:

Illae dissēnsiōnēs *ēius modī* fuērunt *ut* interneciōne cīvium *dīiūdicātae sint* (III Cat. X, 25), *those disturbances were of such a character that they were settled by a slaughter of citizens.*

Temporal Clauses

277. Cum temporal clauses referring to present or future time are regularly in the indicative.

Quibus gaudiīs exsultābis cum nōn *audiēs* . . . (I Cat. X, 26), *in what joy you will exult when you will not hear . . .*

278. The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used with **cum** temporal to describe the situation or circumstances of an action.

Cum ā mē quoque id respōnsum *tulissēs* (I Cat. VIII, 19), *when you had received this answer from me also.*

Cum *haesitāret*, quaesīvī (II Cat. VI, 13), *when he hesitated, I asked.*

279. But **cum** temporal is used with past tenses of the indicative, especially the perfect, to define or date the time when an action occurred.

Cēpit māgnum virtūtis frūctum cum omnēs *dīxistis* (L. M. XX, 59), *he received a great tribute to his ability, when you all said . . .*

280. If the **cum** clause is preceded in the main clause by **tum, eō tempore,** or some other expression of definite time, the time of the action is thereby definitely indicated and the **cum** clause takes the indicative, according to 279.

Nam *tum cum* in Asiā rēs māgnās permultī *āmīserant* (L. M. VII, 19), *for at the time when very many men had lost great fortunes in Asia.*

NOTE. Do not confuse this use of **tum . . . cum** with **cum . . . tum,** *not only . . . but also.*

Dīviciācus quī *cum* māgnae partis hārum regiōnum *tum* etiam Brittaniae imperium obtinuit (B. G. II, 4), *Diviciacus who had power not only over a large part of these regions but also over Britain.*

281. When the **cum** clause contains the main idea or principal event of the sentence, while the main clause merely describes the attendant circumstance, the verb of the **cum** clause is in the indicative. This is called "**cum inversum.**"

Vix ea fātus eram, gemitū cum tālia *reddit* (Aen. II, 323), *scarce had I said this when, with a groan he spoke as follows.*

282. When the **cum** clause is used to express past action repeated or recurring, the indicative is used.

Neque, cum aliquid *mandārat*, cōnfectum putābat (III Cat. VII, 16), *nor when he had given an order did he consider it carried out.*

283. Clauses introduced by **postquam (post . . . quam)**, *after;* **ut**, *when;* **ubi**, *when;* **simulatque (simulac)**, *as soon as*, etc.

In narrative writing, clauses introduced by these conjunctions commonly take the perfect indicative. Such clauses are usually translated in English by the pluperfect.

Postquam L. Lucullus *vēnit* (L. M. IX, 23), *after L. Lucullus had come.*

Simulatque *iussus est*, pāruit (II Cat. VI, 12), *as soon as he was ordered, he obeyed.*

Ut prīmum ex puerīs *excessit* Archiās (A. III, 4), *as soon as Archias had grown up from boyhood.*

284. With the future or future perfect **cum** replaces **postquam**, *after.*

***Cum* eum *vīderō*, Rōmam redībō**, *after I see him, I shall return to Rome.*

285. Dum, quoad, quamdiū, meaning *while, as long as*, introduce temporal clauses which express action extending over a period of time. If the main clause represents action extending over the whole period of time represented by the **dum** clause, the **dum** clause takes any tense of the indicative which the sense demands. This use of a **dum** clause is called "complete coextension."

Dum *canēbat*, audientēs loquēbantur, *while (=all the while that) he was singing, the audience was talking.*

Quam diū *erit* quisquam quī tē dēfendere audeat, vīvēs (I Cat. II, 6), *as long as there will be any one who dares defend you, you will live*

Quoad *potuit* restitit (B. G. IV, 12), *he held out as long as he could.*

286. Dum, *while* (=*within the period that*), represents an action extending over a period of time. If the main verb represents action occurring at some point of time within that period or breaking into it, the **dum** clause takes the present indicative. This use of a **dum**-clause is called "partial coextension."

Dum *canit* quīdam exiit, *while he was singing a certain man went out.*
Dum haec *geruntur*, Sabīnus pervēnit (B. G. III, 17), *while these things were going on Sabinus arrived.*

287. Even in indirect discourse the **dum** clause of partial coextension resists attraction and remains in the present indicative.

288. Dum, dōnec, quoad, *until*, take the indicative of a fact of actual occurrence, but the subjunctive when an action is anticipated, desired, or intended.

Fuī in litterīs scrībendīs occupātus, itaque intrā moenia mānsī dum *dīlūcēscēbat*, *I was busy writing letters and so I stayed in the city until it was growing light.* (The staying in the city was accidental because he was preoccupied in writing.)

Timuit latrōnēs, itaque intrā moenia morātus est *dum dīlūcēsceret*, *he was afraid of robbers and so waited inside the city until it should grow light.* (He wanted to avoid the robbers.)

Dum reliquae nāvēs eō *convenīrent*, ad hōram nōnam exspectāvit (B. G. IV. 23), *he waited up to the ninth hour until the rest of the ships should assemble there.* (His intention in waiting was to meet the other ships.)

289. Priusquam (**prius . . . quam**), and **antequam** (**ante . . . quam**), *before*, take the indicative of a fact of actual occurrence, but the subjunctive of an act anticipated, forestalled, or intended. With the indicative the tenses commonly employed are the perfect or future perfect, sometimes the present.

Foedus īctum est, priusquam proelium *commīsērunt*, *a treaty was made before they began battle.* (The battle actually took place.)

Foedus īctum est, priusquam proelium *committerent*, *a treaty was made before the battle should be begun.* (The purpose in making the treaty was to prevent a battle.)

Caesar priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre *reciperent* in fīnīs Suessiōnum exercitum dūxit (B. G. II, 12), *Caesar led his army into the territory of the Suessiones before the enemy should recover from fear.* (Caesar did not wish the enemy to get any chance to recover.)

NOTE. **Priusquam** is more common than **antequam.**

Clauses of Proviso

290. Dum, dummodo, modo, *provided that,* take the subjunctive. The negative is **nē.**

Māgnō mē metū līberābis, dum modo inter mē atque tē mūrus *intersit* (I Cat. V, 10), *you will free me from great fear provided that there is a wall between you and me.*

Causal Clauses

291. Causal clauses are introduced by **cum, quod, quia, quoniam, quandō,** or a relative.

292. Causal clauses introduced by **cum** always take the subjunctive.

Quae cum ita *sint* (I Cat. V, 10), *since this is the case.*

293. Causal clauses introduced by a relative take the subjunctive.

Ō fortūnāte adulēscēns *quī* tuae virtūtis Homērum praecōnem *invēneris* (A. X, 24), *O fortunate youth who have (to have, since you have), had a Homer to herald your glory.* (**quī** = **cum tū.**)

294. Causal clauses introduced by **quod, quia, quoniam,** or **quandō** take the indicative when they give a reason which the speaker or writer accepts as a fact and will vouch for.

Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs *contendunt* (B. G. I, 1), *the Helvetians also surpass the rest of the Gauls in bravery because they fight in almost daily battles.* (The reason is here stated as a well-known and accepted fact; hence the indicative mood.)

295. Causal clauses introduced by **quod, quia, quoniam, quandō,** take the subjunctive when the reason is one which the writer or speaker quotes on the authority of another, but which he himself may not be able to vouch for.

Mihi grātiae aguntur (ā senātū), quod prōvidentiā meā rēs pūblica *sit līberāta* (III Cat. VI, 14), *I was thanked (by the senate) because by my foresight the state was freed.* (The quod clause gives the senate's reason for the vote of thanks.)

296. Causal clauses dependent on verbs of emotion, such as **queror,** *complain;* **laetor,** *rejoice;* **doleō,** *grieve,* etc., are regularly introduced by **quod,** and frequently take the subjunctive to indicate the grounds of the emotion.

Haeduī vēnērunt questum quod Harūdēs fīnīs eōrum *populārentur* (B. G. I, 37), *the Haedui came to complain because the Harudes were ravaging their territory.*

297. Quoniam usually introduces a self-evident or well-known fact, and hence commonly takes the indicative.

Quoniam iam nox *est* (III Cat. XII, 29), *since it is now night.*

Conditional Sentences

298. Conditional sentences are complex sentences. The subordinate clause is called the protasis and contains the condition; the main clause is called the apodosis and contains the conclusion.

299. Words used to introduce the Conditional Clause:

1. **Sī,** *if,* is the common introductory word.

Sī ille adest, manēbō, *if he is here, I will stay.*

2. **Nisi**, *unless*, *if . . . not*, commonly introduces a negative protasis.

Nisi **ille vēnerit, nōn manēbō,** *if he doesn't come, I will not stay.*

Sī . . . nōn is used in place of **nisi** to introduce a negative protasis.

a. When some particular word is negatived.

Sī **id facere** ***nōn*** **potest,** *if he is unable to do this.*

b. When the negative protasis has been preceded by an affirmative protasis with the same idea involved.

Sī vēnerit manēbō; ***sī nōn*** **vēnerit discēdam,** *if he comes, I will stay; if he does not come, I will leave.*

3. **Sīn,** *but if*, is used for an adversative protasis.

Sīn **autem servīre meae laudī māvīs** (I Cat. IX, 23), *but if you prefer to add to my praise.*

300. Types of Conditional Sentences. — Conditional sentences are of three types: (1) logical conditions; (2) ideal conditions; (3) unreal conditions.[1]

301. Type I. — Logical conditions are conditions so stated as to imply nothing as to the truth of the condition. The indicative is used in both clauses in any tense which the sense demands. They may refer to present, past, or future time.

PRESENT: **Caesar sī** ***pūgnat, vincit,*** *if Caesar is fighting, he is conquering.*

PAST: **Caesar, sī** ***pūgnāvit, vīcit,*** *if Caesar fought, he conquered.*

FUTURE: **Caesar, sī** ***pūgnābit, vincet,*** *if Caesar fights, he will conquer.*

Caesar, sī ***pūgnāverit, vincet,*** *if Caesar fights, he will conquer.*

[1] Logical = simple = real. Ideal = future less vivid. Unreal = contrary to fact.

302. Note that the Latin employs the future or even the future perfect in the protasis of a future condition where the English usually uses the present tense. Cf. 212–213.

303. Type II. — Ideal conditions refer to future time. The supposed case is assumed as possible of fulfillment. The present subjunctive is employed in both clauses. Sometimes the perfect subjunctive is used to represent the action as completed, especially in the protasis.

Caesar, sī *pūgnet, vincat,* *if Caesar should fight, he would conquer.*

304. Note the auxiliaries used in English in the future logical and future ideal conditions.

	Future Logical	Future Ideal
Protasis:	*shall, will*	*should, were to*
Apodosis:	*shall, will*	*would, should*

Future Logical: **Sī hōc *faciet,* eum laudābimus,** *if he does (will do) this, we shall praise him.*

Future Ideal: **Sī hōc *faciat,* eum *laudēmus,*** *if he should do this, (were to* do this), *we should praise him.*

305. Type III. — Unreal conditions are conditions in which the supposed case is so stated as to imply by the form of the condition that the case is unreal or impossible of fulfillment. The subjunctive is used in both clauses, and the time may be present or past.

306. Present Time. — Unreal conditions have the imperfect subjunctive in both clauses to express unreality or non-fulfillment in present time.

Caesar, sī *pūgnāret, vinceret,* *if Caesar were fighting, he would be conquering.*

Sī tē parentēs *timērent,* aliquō *concēderēs* (I Cat. VII, 17), *if your parents feared you, you would go off somewhere.*

307. Past Time. — Unreal conditions use the pluperfect

subjunctive in both clauses to express unreality or non-fulfillment in past time.

Caesar, sī *pūgnāvisset, vīcisset,* *if Caesar had fought, he would have conquered.*

Sī hōc idem Mārcō Mārcellō *dīxissem,* **iam mihi cōnsulī senātus vim et manūs *intulisset*** (I Cat. VIII, 21), *if I had said the same thing to Marcus Marcellus, the senate would have laid violent hands on me though I am the consul.*

308. Mixed Conditions. — Sometimes the protasis of an unreal condition is in past time (pluperfect subjunctive), while the apodosis is in present time (imperfect subjunctive) or vice versa.

Tum sī plūs apud populum Rōmānum auctōritās tua quam populī Rōmānī vēra causa *valuisset,* **hodiē hōc orbis terrae imperium *tenērēmus?*** (L. M. XVII, 53), *if your influence had then had more weight than the true interests of the Roman people, should we to-day be holding supremacy over all the world?*

309. Verbs of *possibility* and *power*, *obligation* and *necessity*, and verbs in the *active* or *passive periphrastic conjugation* usually employ the imperfect or perfect indicative instead of the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive in the apodoses of unreal conditions.

Quod sī Rōmae Pompēius prīvātus esset hōc tempore, tamen ad tantum bellum *erat mittendus* (L. M. XVII, 50), *but if Pompey were a private citizen at Rome at the present time, still he ought to be sent to so great a war.*

Itaque, crēdō, sī cīvis Rōmānus Archiās lēgibus nōn esset, ut cīvitāte dōnārētur perficere nōn *potuit* (A. X, 25), *and so, I suppose, if Archias were not legally a Roman citizen, he couldn't manage to be presented with citizenship.*

310. This use of the indicative in unreal conditions occurs most frequently with the following verbs:

possum, *be able* **licet,** *may* **oportet,** *ought* **dēbeō,** *ought* **necesse est,** *must*, and with the periphrastic conjugations.

311. In logical conditions or (sometimes) in ideal conditions the apodosis may assume any form which the sense demands, especially an imperative or hortatory subjunctive.

Sī mihi cōnflāre vīs invidiam, rēctā *perge* in exsilium (I Cat. IX, 23), *if you want to stir up hatred against me, go straight into exile.*

312. The protasis of a conditional sentence is frequently expressed by a participle, an ablative absolute, or an adjective.

Quid tandem (*tabernīs*) *incēnsīs* futūrum fuit? (IV Cat. VII, 17), *what, pray, would have happened if their shops had been burned?*

313. Conditional clauses of comparison are introduced by **velutsī, tamquam sī, acsī, quāsī, ut sī,** *as if.* The verb is in the subjunctive, the tense being determined by the rule for sequence of tenses, though the English translation would seem to place them among unreal conditions.

Absentis Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, *velutsī* cōram *adesset*, horruērunt (B. G. I, 32), *they shuddered at the cruelty of Ariovistus in his absence just as if he were present in person.*

Ab urbe fugit *velutsī* in exsilium īre *iussus sit*, *he is fleeing from the city as if he had been ordered to go into exile.*

Concessive Clauses

314. Concessive clauses are commonly introduced by **cum; quī; quamquam; etsī, etiamsī, tametsī; quamvīs; licet; ut; nē.**

315. Cum, *although*, introducing concessive clauses, takes the subjunctive.

***Cum* ad vesperum *pūgnātum sit* āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit** (B. G. I, 26), *though the battle lasted until evening, no one could see an enemy in flight.*

316. **Quī = cum is**, etc., introducing concessive clauses, takes the subjunctive.

Praesertim *quī* nōs nōn pūgnandō sed tacendō superāre *potuerint* (III Cat. IX, 22), *especially since they could have conquered us not by fighting but by keeping silent.*

317. **Quamquam,** *although*, introducing concessive clauses, takes the indicative.

Nam P. Lentulus, quamquam iūs praetōris *āmīserat*, tamen sē magistrātū abdicāvit (III Cat. VI, 15), *for Publius Lentulus, although he had lost the rights of a praetor, resigned his office.*

318. **Quamquam** is frequently used to introduce the main clause, in such cases being equivalent to the English, *and yet . . .*

***Quamquam* mihi nihil ab istīs iam nocērī potest** (III Cat. XII, 27), *and yet no harm can be done to me now by those (scoundrels).*

319. **Quamvīs,** *however much you please*, *although*, introduces concessive clauses in the subjunctive.

***Quamvīs increpitent* sociī** (Aen. III, 454), *however much your followers find fault with you.*

320. **Licet,** *although*, takes the subjunctive. In this use **licet** retains its verbal nature, and therefore, since **licet** is a primary tense, the verb dependent on it must be present or perfect.

***Licet* ille *sit* fortis, tamen sē dēdet,** *brave though he be, still he will surrender.*

321. **Ut,** *granted that*, and **nē,** *granted that . . . not*, introduce a statement conceded or granted for the sake of argument. The verb is in the subjunctive, and the main clause often contains some correlative to the **ut** or **nē**, such as **tamen**.

Ut **omnia contrā opīniōnem** ***acciderent,*** **tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus posse** (B. G. III, 9), *though everything turned out contrary to their expectation, still they were best provided with ships.*

322. Etsī, etiamsī, tametsī, *even if, although,* introduce concessive clauses. The mood is determined by the principles which govern the mood of conditional clauses.

Etsī **dux ipse mihi** ***imperet,*** **nōn pāream,** *even if the commander himself should command me, I would not obey.*

Infinitives

323. The Infinitive as Subject. — The infinitive is a verbal noun and as such may be the subject of a verb. When so used its gender is neuter, and any predicate adjective which modifies it will be neuter.

Hūius ōrātiōnis ***difficilius*** **est exitium quam prīncipium** ***invenīre*** (L. M. I, 3), *it is harder to find a conclusion to this speech than a beginning.*

324. The subjective infinitive may itself take an accusative subject.

Cōnstituērunt optimum esse domum suam ***quemque revertī*** (B. G. II, 10), *they decided that it was best for each one to return to his own home.*

325. Note the construction with the following impersonal verbs:

1. **Placet,** *it pleases,* and **vidētur,** *it seems best,* take the dative of the person and an infinitive subject.

Lēgātō **placuit mīlitēs castrīs** ***continēre,*** *it pleased the lieutenant (the lieutenant thought it best) to keep the soldiers in camp.*

Vīsum est ***Caesarī*** **in Galliam** ***contendere,*** *it seemed best to Caesar to hasten into Gaul.*

2. **Oportet,** *it is fitting, it is proper, ought,* takes (*a*) the

accusative and the infinitive, or (*b*) the subjunctive without **ut**.

Eum interficī **oportet,**
Interficiātur **oportet,** } *he ought to be put to death.*

3. **Licet,** *it is permitted, may;* **necesse est,** *it is necessary, must,* take (*a*) the accusative and infinitive, (*b*) the dative and infinitive, (*c*) the subjunctive without **ut**.

Nōn licet ***mē manēre,***
Nōn licet ***mihi manēre,*** } *I am not allowed to stay, I may not stay.*
Nōn licet ***maneam,***

Necesse est ***mē discēdere,***
Necesse est ***mihi discēdere,*** } *I must depart.*
Necesse est ***discēdam,***

326. For the expression of past time with such verbs as **licet, oportet,** etc., the Latin employs a present infinitive and a past tense of the auxiliary verb where the English employs a perfect infinitive with a present or past auxiliary.

Mē ***venīre oportuit,*** *I ought to have come.*
Venīre ḍēbuī, *I ought to have come.*
Venīre potuī, *I could have come.*
Mihi ***venīre licuit,*** *I might have come.*

327. A predicate noun or adjective in the above constructions (325) is put in the same case as the noun which it defines.

Nōn licuit Gracchum iterum esse ***tribūnum,***
Nōn licuit Gracchō iterum esse ***tribūnō,*** } *Gracchus was not permitted to be tribune again.*

328. Complementary Infinitives. – Infinitives without subjects expressed may depend on and complete the meaning of certain other verbs. Infinitives thus used are called "complementary infinitives."

329. The following verbs may take complementary infinitives:

volō, *wish, be willing*
nōlō, *be unwilling*
mālō, *prefer*
cupiō, *desire*
studeō, *desire*
metuō, **vereor**, **timeō**, *be afraid (to)*. Cf. 268
cōgō, *force, compel*
patior, *allow*
sinō, *permit*
sciō, *know how*
nesciō, *not know how*
dubitō, *hesitate* (273)
moror, *delay*
cunctor, *hesitate*
contendō, *hasten*
mātūrō, *hasten*
coepī, *began*
incipiō, *begin*
cōnor, *try, attempt*
temptō, *try, attempt*
possum, *be able, can*
soleō, *be accustomed*
cōnsuēscō, *become accustomed*
audeō, *dare*
dēbeō, *ought*
statuō, **cōnstituō**, *decide, determine*
parō, *prepare*
dēsistō, *cease*
dīcor, *be said*
videor, *seem*

Quō facilius, sī *trānsīre* cōnārentur, *prohibēre* posset (B. G. I, 8), *that he might the more easily be able to prevent them if they should attempt to cross.*

330. Predicate nouns or adjectives following complementary infinitives agree with the subject of the main verb.

Neque potest imperātor *sevērus* esse (L. M. XIII, 38), *nor can a general be severe.*

331. Objective Infinitive. — An infinitive may be used as the object of another verb. So with many of the above verbs (329), when the subject of the infinitive is not the same as the subject of the verb on which it depends, and therefore must be expressed.

332. The following verbs very frequently take an objective infinitive:

volō, nōlō, mālō, cupiō, prohibeō, iubeō, vetō, sinō, cōgō, patior

Orgetorīgem ex vinculīs causam *dīcere* coēgērunt (B. G. I, 4), *they forced Orgetorix to plead his cause in chains.*

Ille vōs omnēs salvōs *esse* voluit (III Cat. IX, 22), *he wished all of you to be safe.*

333. Infinitive in Indirect Discourse. — Statements dependent on some verb of *saying*, *thinking*, *knowing*, *perceiving*, etc., take the infinitive with subject accusative.

DIRECT STATEMENT: ***Belgae sunt fortēs***, *the Belgians are brave.*
INDIRECT STATEMENT: **Caesar** dīcit ***Belgās esse fortīs***, *Caesar says that the Belgians are brave.* Here the **sunt** in direct statement has become **esse** in the indirect, and its subject **Belgae** has become **Belgās**.

334. Verbs of *hoping* and *promising* in English frequently have the construction of complementary infinitive. In Latin they regularly take a future infinitive with the subject accusative expressed. Such verbs are: **spērō**, *hope;* **prōmittō** and **polliceor**, *promise.*

Quī sēsē mē in meō lectulō *interfectūrōs esse* **pollicērentur** (I Cat. IV, 9), *who promised to kill me in my bed (promised that they would kill me).*

335. Negō, *deny*, *say . . . not*, is regularly used in Latin instead of **dīcō . . . nōn**, etc.

(Caesar) *negat* sē posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare (B. G. I, 8), *(Caesar) said that he could not grant a passage through the province to any one.*

336. Verbs of emotion sometimes take the construction of indirect discourse. Such verbs are: **gaudeō** and **laetor**, *rejoice;* **doleō** and **lūgeō**, *mourn, grieve;* **mīror**, *wonder;* **queror**, *complain.*

Urbem **ē suīs faucibus *ēreptam esse*** **lūget** (II Cat. I, 2), *he grieves that the city has been snatched from his jaws.*

337. Tenses of the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse. — The infinitive has three tenses, — present, perfect, and future. Deponent verbs have future active infinitives.

338. The present infinitive in indirect discourse represents action going on at the time of the verb of saying, and always stands for a present tense of the direct statement.

DIRECT STATEMENT: **Caesar *vincit,*** *Caesar is conquering.*
INDIRECT DISCOURSE: **Dīcit Caesarem *vincere,*** *he says that Caesar is conquering.*
Dīxit Caesarem *vincere,* *he said that Caesar was conquering.*

339. The perfect infinitive in indirect discourse represents action completed before the time of the action of the verb of saying, and may stand for an imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect of the direct statement.

DIRECT STATEMENT: **Caesar *vincēbat* (*vīcit, vīcerat*),** *Caesar was conquering, conquered, had conquered.*
INDIRECT DISCOURSE: **Dīcit Caesarem *vīcisse,*** *he says that Caesar was conquering (conquered, had conquered).*
Dīxit Caesarem *vīcisse,* *he said that Caesar conquered (had conquered).*

340. The future infinitive in indirect discourse represents action as future with reference to the time of the main verb of saying, and stands for a future tense of the direct statement.

DIRECT STATEMENT: **Caesar *vincet,*** *Caesar will conquer.*
INDIRECT DISCOURSE: **Dīcit Caesarem *victūrum esse,*** *he says that Caesar will conquer.*
Dīxit Caesarem *victūrum esse,* *he said that Caesar would conquer.*

341. When a future passive infinitive is required in indirect discourse, the expressions **fore ut, futūrum esse ut,** with the subjunctive (whose tense depends on the verb of saying), are generally used instead of the forms of the future passive found in the grammars,—**amātum īrī,** etc.

(Dīviciācus dīxit) quā ex rē ***futūrum esse utī*** tōtīus Galliae animī ā sē ***āverterentur*** (B. G. I, 20), *Diviciacus said that, as a result of this, the allegiance of all Gaul would be turned from him.* ***Futūrum esse utī . . . āverterentur*** for ***animōs āversum īrī***.

342. So also a verb which has no future participle can have no future active infinitive and must employ the same circumlocution, **futūrum esse ut.**

Māgnam in spem veniēbat ***fore ut*** pertināciā ***dēsisteret*** (B. G. I, 42), *he was beginning to have great hopes that he would desist from his obstinacy.* Here **fore ut . . . dēsisteret** replaces the missing future infinitive of **dēsistō**.

343. Since **possum** has no future infinitive, its present infinitive is used instead.

Tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī ***posse*** spērant (B. G. I, 3), *they hope that they will be able to gain possession of all Gaul.*

344. Personal and Impersonal Constructions with Verbs of Saying, etc. — Passive verbs of saying, etc., in the simple tenses (present, imperfect, future), are followed by a complementary infinitive instead of the infinitive with subject accusative. This is called the "personal construction."

Mulierēs ex urbe ***profectae*** esse dīcuntur, *the women are said to have set forth from the city.*

Not:

Dīcitur mulierēs ex urbe ***profectās*** esse, *it is said that the women set forth from the city.*

345. Passive verbs of saying, etc., in the compound tenses (perfect, pluperfect, future perfect), are used impersonally with the infinitive and subject accusative. This is called the "impersonal construction."

Dictum est ***Mēdēam*** ex Pontō profūgisse, *it is said that Medea fled from Pontus.*

Indirect Discourse

346. When a sentence of the direct discourse is changed into indirect discourse, the following changes take place.

347. The main verb becomes an infinitive with subject accusative, and all subordinate clauses become subjunctive.

348. The tense of the infinitive is determined by the rules given in 337–343. The tense of the subjunctive is determined by the rule of sequence 242–250.

Eōs quī *restitissent* īnfīrmōs sine illō *fore* putābam (III Cat. II, 3), *I thought that those who had remained behind would be weak without him.*

349. When a command (237–239) or an entreaty (236) is put into indirect discourse, it is put in the subjunctive, the tense being determined by the verb of saying according to the rule for the sequence of tenses.

Sī quid vultis, ad Īdūs Aprīlīs *revertiminī*, *if you want anything, return on the Ides of April.*

Caesar respondit sī quid vellent, ad Īdūs Aprīlīs *reverterentur* (B. G. I, 7), *Caesar answered that if they wanted anything, they should return on the Ides of April.* Note that **vultis** becomes subjunctive because it is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse, and **revertiminī** (imperative) becomes **reverterentur** according to 349.

350. Subordinate clauses which are purely parenthetical or explanatory on the part of the writer or speaker are not properly a part of the indirect discourse and therefore remain indicative if they would be so in direct discourse.

Equitēs Rōmānī dētulērunt Bīthȳniae, quae nunc vestra prōvincia *est*, vīcōs exūstōs esse complūrēs (L. M. II, 5), *Roman knights have reported that many villages of Bithynia, which is now our province, have been burned.* Cicero is quoting a message from the Roman knights, but the clause **quae . . . est** is his own statement and not a part of the message.

351. Conditional Sentences in Indirect Discourse. — A conditional sentence is a complex sentence; hence when changed into indirect discourse its main verb (of the apodosis) becomes infinitive and its subordinate verb (of the protasis) becomes subjunctive.

352. Logical Conditions in Indirect Discourse. — These conditions follow the rules laid down in 347–348. For examples, see 355.

353. Ideal Conditions in Indirect Discourse. — Ideal conditions represent future time, and therefore when an ideal condition is transformed into indirect discourse, the apodosis becomes a future infinitive and the protasis becomes subjunctive, the tense being determined by the rule for the sequence of tenses. Cf. 355.

NOTE. Future logical and ideal conditions have the same form in indirect discourse. Cf. 355.

354. Unreal Conditions in Indirect Discourse. — When unreal conditions are transformed into indirect discourse, they follow the rules of 347. The following peculiarities are to be noted, however:

1. The tense of the protasis remains unchanged, being unaffected by the rule for the sequence of tenses.

2. An active apodosis becomes the perfect infinitive of the active periphrastic conjugation, **-ūrus fuisse**.

3. When the verb of the apodosis is passive or has no future participle, the circumlocution, **futūrum fuisse ut** (with the imperfect subjunctive), is used. Cf. 355.

NOTE. The apodoses of present and past unreal conditions have the same form in indirect discourse.

355. TABLE OF CONDITIONS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Type	Direct Discourse	Indirect Discourse
Present Logical	**Caesar, sī pūgnat, vincit,** *if Caesar is fighting, he is conquering.*	**Sciō Caesarem, sī pūgnet, vincere,** *I know that if Caesar is fighting, he is conquering.* **Sciēbam Caesarem, sī pūgnāret, vincere,** *I knew that if Caesar was fighting, he was conquering.*
Past Logical	**Caesar, sī pūgnāvit, vīcit,** *if Caesar fought, he conquered.*	**Sciō, Caesarem, sī pūgnāverit, vīcisse,** *I know that if Caesar fought, he conquered.* **Sciēbam Caesarem, sī pūgnāret, vīcisse,** *I knew that if Caesar fought, he conquered.*
Future Logical	**Caesar, sī pūgnābit, vincet,** *if Caesar fights, he will conquer.*	**Sciō Caesarem, sī pūgnet, victūrum esse,** *I know that if Caesar fights, he will conquer.* **Sciēbam Caesarem, sī pūgnāret, victūrum esse,** *I knew that if Caesar fought, he would conquer.*
	Caesar, sī pūgnāverit, vincet, *if Caesar fights, he will conquer.*	**Scio Caesarem, sī pūgnāverit, victūrum esse,** *I know that if Caesar fights, he will conquer.* **Sciēbam Caesarem, sī pūgnāsset, victūrum esse,** *I knew that if Caesar fought, he would conquer.*
Future Ideal	**Caesar, sī pūgnet, vincat,** *if Caesar should fight, he would conquer.* **Caesar, sī pūgnāverit, vincat,** *if Caesar should fight, he would conquer.*	(Same as above in future logical conditions. Cf. 353, Note.)
Present Unreal	**Caesar, sī pūgnāret, vinceret,** *if Caesar were fighting, he would be conquering.*	**Sciō / Sciēbam** } **Caesarem, sī pūgnāret, victūrum fuisse,** *I know / I knew* } *that if Caesar were fighting, he would be conquering.* Cf. 354, 1.

Type	Direct Discourse	Indirect Discourse
Past Unreal	**Caesar, sī pūgnāvisset, vīcisset,** *if Caesar had fought, he would have conquered.*	**Sciō / Sciēbam** } **Caesarem, sī pūgnāvisset, victūrum fuisse,** / *I know / I knew* } *that if Caesar had fought, he would have conquered.* Cf. 354, 1.
Passive Future	**Sī Caesar pūgnābit, hostēs vincentur,** *if Caesar fights, the enemy will be conquered.*	**Sciō sī Caesar pūgnet fore ut hostēs vincantur.** *I know that if Caesar fights the enemy will be conquered.* **Sciēbam sī Caesar pūgnāret, fore ut hostēs vincerentur.** *I knew that if Caesar fought, the enemy would be conquered.*
Passive Unreal	**Sī Caesar pūgnāvisset, hostēs victī essent.** *If Caesar had fought, the enemy would have been conquered.*	**Sciō / Sciēbam** } **sī Caesar pūgnāvisset, futūrum fuisse ut hostēs vincerentur.** / *I know / I knew* } *that if Caesar had fought the enemy would have been conquered.*

356. Those unreal conditions which have indicative apodoses in direct discourse (cf. 309–310) have apodoses in the simple perfect infinitive in indirect discourse. This usage is especially common with **possum**.

Direct Discourse: **Etiam sī nōn (cīvis) esset, *ascīscendus erat,*** *even if he were not (already a citizen), he ought to be enrolled.*

Indirect Discourse: **ut . . . etiam sī nōn (cīvis) esset, putētis *ascīscendum fuisse*** (A. II, 4), *so that you would think that even if he were not (already a citizen) he ought to be enrolled.*

357. Dependent Unreal Conditions. — When the active apodosis of an unreal condition in past time is at the same time a clause of result, an indirect question, or a clause depending on a verb of doubting, the apodosis takes the perfect subjunctive of the active periphrastic, **-ūrus fuerim,** etc.

Ab eō quaesīvī quid *factūrus fuerit* sī cōnsul creātus esset, *I asked him what he would have done if he had been elected consul.*

358. Apodoses of present unreal conditions and all passive apodoses of unreal conditions are unchanged when dependent on such constructions as are mentioned in 357.

Participles

359. Participles are verb forms used as adjectives.

360. Transitive verbs have three participles as follows:

	PRESENT	PERFECT	FUTURE
ACTIVE:	**laudāns**, *praising*	—— —— ——	**laudātūrus**, *about to praise*
PASSIVE:	—— —— ——	**laudātus** (*having been*) *praised*	—— —— ——

361. Deponent verbs have all three participles.

cōnāns, *trying* **cōnātus**, *having tried* **cōnātūrus**, *about to try*

362. Tenses. — The tense of the participles represents time only with reference to the verb of the clause in which they stand.

363. The present participle represents action taking place at the same time as the action of the clause in which it stands.

Mithridātēs *fugiēns* maximam vim aurī in Pontō relīquit (L. M. IX, 22), *Mithridates while fleeing (= in his flight) left a great amount of gold in Pontus.*

364. The perfect passive participle represents action completed before the action of the verb of its clause.

Id calamitāte *doctī* memoriā tenēre dēbēmus (L. M. VII, 19), *we (who have been) taught by disaster ought to remember this.*

365. The future participle represents action which is or was to take place after the action of the verb of its clause.

***Moritūrī* tē salūtāmus**, *we (who are) about to die salute you.*

366. Participles as Adjectives. — Participles may be used purely as adjectives.

audācia effrēnāta, *unbridled boldness*
poena dēbita, *deserved punishment*

367. Participles as Nouns. — The following participles are frequently used as nouns:

sapiēns, *philosopher* **amāns**, *a lover* **victī**, *the conquered*
audientēs, *the audience* **doctī**, *the wise, wise men, learned men*

Itaque mortem *sapientēs* numquam invītī oppetīvērunt (IV Cat. IV, 7), *and so philosophers have never met death reluctantly.*

368. Frequently a perfect passive participle modifying a noun is itself equivalent to an English abstract noun.

Ab urbe conditā, *from the founding of the city* (*from the city founded*).
Ante Chrīstum nātum, *before the birth of Christ* (*before Christ born*).
Post cīvitātem datam, *after the bestowal of citizenship* (*after citizenship bestowed*).

369. Ablative Absolute. — A noun and a participle (present or perfect) may be used together in the ablative case to form an ablative absolute, the combination being equivalent to a clause. Cf. 371.

***Commūtātō cōnsiliō* nostrōs lacessere coepērunt** (B. G. I, 23), *they changed their plan and began to harass our men* (*their plan having been changed, they began*, etc.).

370. The Latin has no present participle for the verb **sum**; hence two nouns or a noun and an adjective may form an ablative absolute where the present participle of **sum** (English *being*) is understood.

Messālā et Pīsōne cōnsulibus (B. G. I, 2), *in the consulship of Messala and Piso* (*Messala and Piso being consuls*).

Quā *Sēquanīs invītīs* īre nōn poterant (B. G. I, 9), *and by this* (*road*) *they could not go if the Sequani were unwilling* (*the Sequani being unwilling*).

371. An ablative absolute may be equivalent to various kinds of clauses, the translation to be adopted in any given case depending on the context. Thus the sentence, ***Oppidō incēnsō*** **hostēs discēdent,** may be variously trans-translated as follows:

The enemy will withdraw when the town has been burned. (Time.)
The enemy will withdraw if the town is burned. (Condition.)
The enemy will withdraw because the town has been burned. (Cause.)
The enemy will withdraw though the town has been burned. (Concession.)
The enemy will burn the town and withdraw. (Coördinate clause.)

372. The ablative absolute construction with a perfect passive participle is in most cases a substitute for a lacking perfect active participle with a direct object. Thus, in the sentence,

The enemy *having seized* the heights began battle,

having seized is a perfect active participle and has no Latin equivalent. Before being translated into Latin, therefore, the English must be changed into the passive form.

The enemy, ***the heights having been seized,*** *began battle,* **hostēs, superiōribus locīs occupātīs, proelium commīsērunt.**

373. Deponent verbs, however, take the active construction and follow the English exactly. Note the use of participles in the following:

Itaque apud oppidum *morātī* agrōsque *dēpopulātī* vīcīsque *incēnsīs* ad castra Caesaris contendērunt (B. G. II, 7), *accordingly having tarried near the town, having laid waste the fields, and having burned the villages, they hastened to Caesar's camp.*

374. When not to use the Ablative Absolute. — A noun or pronoun may not be used in the ablative absolute construction except when it refers to a person or thing different from any noun or pronoun of the clause in which it

stands. Therefore when the noun or pronoun to be modified by the participle can have any grammatical relation, as subject, object, etc., with any other part of the sentence, no ablative absolute is possible.

Hostēs suās cōpiās ex castrīs *ēductās* īnstrūxērunt (B. G. II, 8), *the enemy having led forth their troops from the camp drew them up.* Here the ablative absolute is impossible.

375. Participles as Clauses. — A participle is frequently used in Latin where the English employs a clause.

1. Participle for a relative clause.

Quod Aeduōs frātrēs saepe numerō ā senātū *appellātōs* in servitūte vidēbat tenērī (B. G. I, 33), *Because he saw that the Aedui, who had often been called brothers by the senate, were held in slavery.*

2. Participle for a causal clause.

Trānsīsse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte sed *rogātum* ā Gallīs (B. G. I, 44), (*he said*) *that he had crossed the Rhine not of his own accord, but because he had been asked by the Gauls.*

3. Participle for a temporal clause.

***Cōnantēs* dīcere prohibuit** (B. G. I, 47), *when they tried to speak, he prevented them.*

4. Participle for a concessive clause.

Ut ille *pulsus superātus que* rēgnāret (L. M. III, 8), *so that, although he had been defeated and conquered, he continued to reign.*

5. Participle for a conditional clause.

***Damnātum* poenam sequī oportēbat** (B. G. I, 4), *if condemned, punishment must overtake him.*

6. Participle equivalent to a verb correlative with the main verb.

Reliquōs omnēs *cōnsecūtī* equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt (B. G. I, 53), *our cavalry overtook all the rest and killed them.*

Gerund and Gerundive

376. The gerund is a verbal noun which is used in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular only. The accusative gerund is used only with the preposition **ad**. The infinitive takes the place of the nominative of the gerund and the gerund as direct object. The dative of the gerund is rare.

NOM. **Laudāre est facile,** *praising is easy.* Cf. 376, 323.
GEN. **Studium bellandī,** *a desire of making war.*
DAT. **Locus pūgnandō idōneus,** *a spot suitable for fighting.* Cf. 376.
ACC. **Parātus ad pūgnandum,** *prepared for fighting.*
ABL. **Nōn pūgnandō sed tacendō,** *not by fighting, but by keeping silent.*

377. Gerundive. — The gerundive is a verbal adjective used in all genders, numbers, and cases. The dative case is not often used, being replaced by **ad** with the accusative.

NOM. **Vir laudandus,** *a man to be praised.*
GEN. **Studium urbis capiendae,** *a desire of capturing the city.*
DAT. **Locus castrīs pōnendīs idōneus,** *a spot suitable for pitching camp.*
ACC. **Parātus ad urbem capiendam,** *prepared for capturing the city.*
ABL. **Discimus bonīs librīs legendīs,** *we learn by reading good books.*

378. Gerund *vs.* Gerundive. — The English possesses no gerundive, but the gerund construction in English may stand for a gerund or a gerundive construction in Latin. If the English gerund takes an object, the gerundive construction is commonly employed in Latin. If the English gerund has no object, the gerund is employed in Latin. Thus:

A plan of withdrawing, **cōnsilium discēdendī**. In this phrase the English gerund has no object. Hence the gerund is employed in Latin.

379. *A plan of destroying the state*, **cōnsilium dēlendae**

reī pūblicae. In this phrase the English gerund has **an** object, and therefore in Latin the gerundive construction is used. Since the gerundive is merely an adjective, the Latin makes the **reī pūblicae** genitive depending on **cōnsilium,** though the English puts the gerund in the genitive. The gerundive, **dēlendae,** of course, modifies **reī pūblicae.**

380. The reflexive pronoun **suī** may be singular or plural. When it is used with the genitive of the gerundive, it is treated as singular even though its meaning is plural.

Multī cīvitātis prīncipēs *suī cōnservandī* causā profūgērunt (I Cat. III, 7), *many of the leading men of the state fled to save themselves.*

381. The accusative of the gerund or gerundive with **ad,** *for,* or the genitive followed by **causā,** *for the purpose of,* may be used to express purpose.

Urbis capiendae causā, *for the purpose of capturing the city, to capture the city.*
Pūgnandī causā, *for the purpose of fighting, to fight.*
Ad urbem capiendam, *for capturing the city, to capture the city.*
Ad pūgnandum, *for fighting, to fight.*

382. The gerundive modifying the object may be used to express purpose or in place of an object clause. Some of the commonest verbs so used are:

cūrō, *provide for, attend to*	**attribuō,** *assign*
concēdō, *intrust, hand over*	**dō,** *give*
relinquō, *leave*	**trādō,** *give over*

Pontem faciendum **cūrat** (B. G. I, 13), *he provides for the construction of a bridge = he has a bridge built.*

Attribuit *nōs trucīdandōs* **Cethēgō, et *cēterōs cīvīs interficiendōs*** **Gabīniō, *urbem īnflammandam*** **Cassiō, *tōtam Ītaliam vāstandam dīripiendam*****que Catilīnae** (IV Cat. VI, 13), *he assigned* ***the murder of us to Cethegus and the slaughter of the rest of the citizens to Gabinius, the burning of the city to Cassius, and the devastation and plundering of all Italy to Catiline.***

Passive Periphrastic Conjugation

383. The passive (second) periphrastic conjugation is a combination of the gerundive and the various forms of the verb **sum**. There is always some idea of necessity or obligation involved, which may be translated in various ways.

Catilīna interficiendus est, { *Catiline must be killed.* / *Catiline ought to be killed.* / *Catiline is to be killed.* }

384. With the passive periphrastic the agent or doer, the person on whom the necessity rests, is expressed by the dative.

Catilīna *nōbīs* interficiendus est, { *Catiline must be killed by us.* / *We must kill Catiline.* / *We ought to kill Catiline.* }

385. When the passive periphrastic is to be used, all active sentences in English must be changed into the passive.

We must kill Catiline = Catiline must be killed by us, **Catilīna nōbīs interficiendus est.**

386. When an intransitive verb is to be used in the passive periphrastic, it must be put in the impersonal form.

We must set out = it must be set out by us, **nōbīs *proficīscendum est*.**

387. The verbs mentioned in 79–80 are used impersonally in the passive (cf. 82), and therefore must be so used in the passive periphrastic.

They must be persuaded = it must be persuaded to them, **persuādendum est illīs.**

388. If this construction would bring two datives together in such a way as to cause ambiguity, instead of the dative of agent, the ablative of agent is employed.

We must persuade them, **illīs ā nōbīs persuādendum est.**

389. For the passive periphrastic forms in unreal conditions, cf. 309–310.

Supine

390. Supine in *-um*. — The accusative supine in **-um** may be used with verbs of motion to express purpose. Cf. 257. It may take an object.

Lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt *rogātum* auxilium (B. G. I, 11), *they send ambassadors to Caesar to ask for aid.*

391. Supine in *-ū*. — The ablative supine in **-ū** is used with certain adjectives as an ablative of specification. The following supines are most common:

dictū, *to say* **factū,** *to do* **vīsū,** *to see, to behold*

392. The supine in **-ū** is most frequently used with the following adjectives:

facilis, *easy*	**horribilis,** *horrible*	**optimus,** *best*
difficilis, *difficult*	**mīrābilis,** *wonderful*	**incrēdibilis,** *incredible*

Optimum factū, *the best thing to do.*
Facile factū, *easy to do.*
Mīrābile dictū, *wonderful to say.*

393. The supine in **-ū** never takes an object.

CONJUNCTIONS

394. Copulative conjunctions are those which merely connect affirmatively or negatively two words, phrases, or clauses.

et, *and,* is the simplest connective and is colorless.

-que, *and* (enclitic), connects words, etc., which are closely related to each other. **Pater māterque.**

atque (**ac**), *and, and also, and especially*, emphasizes the second word connected.

Dīs immortālibus *atque* Iovī Stātōrī (I Cat. V, 11), *to the immortal gods and especially to Jupiter Stator.*

quoque, *also, too*, emphasizes the word to which it belongs.

Tū quoque, *you also.*

neque (**nec**), *nor, and . . . not*, is regularly used in place of **et . . . nōn.**

***Nec* tamen ego sum ille ferreus** (IV Cat. II, 3), *and yet I am not such a hard-hearted man . . .*

395. When three or more words are to be connected by *and*, (1) omit all conjunctions; (2) connect all with **et**; or (3) unite the last two by **-que** (not **et**).

Hominēs, mulierēs, puerī,
(*Et*) hominēs *et* mulierēs *et* puerī, } *the men, women, and children.*
Hominēs mulierēs puerī*que*,

396. When a noun is modified by two adjectives, the adjectives should be connected by a conjunction.

Multī *et* summī virī, *many very great men.*

397. Adversative conjunctions are those which denote opposition.

sed, *but*, the common word.

autem, *but, on the other hand, however*, is the weakest adversative and frequently = *moreover, furthermore.* It is always postpositive.

vērum, *but*, is like **sed**, but is not so common. It is usually first.

vērō, *truly, indeed*, always postpositive.

at, *but*, introduces an objection or contrast and is very strong.

tamen, *nevertheless, however, still, yet*, is really concessive.

398. Disjunctive conjunctions indicate an alternative.

aut, *or*, permits no choice and excludes one of the alternatives.

Ut aut ōderint aut ament (L. M. XV, 43), *so that they either hate or love.*

vel, *or*, permits a choice of the alternatives. It frequently introduces a correction. So also with **-ve**, which is less common.

sīve, *or*, allows a choice and is used much as **vel.**

an, *or*, is used particularly in questions. Cf. 221.

399. Correlative conjunctions are those conjunctions which occur in pairs.

et . . . et, *both . . . and.*
neque (nec) . . . neque (nec), *neither . . . nor.*
nōn sōlum / nōn modo . . . sed etiam / vērum etiam, *not only . . . but also.*
cum . . . tum, *both . . . and, not only . . . but also.* Cf. 280.
aut . . . aut, *either . . . or*, mutually excludes the alternatives.
vel . . . vel / sīve . . . sīve, *whether . . . or*, permits a choice.
tam . . . quam, *so . . . as, as . . . as, so much . . . as.*
ita (sīc) . . . ut, *just . . . as.*
utrum . . . an, etc. Cf. 221.

ORDER OF WORDS

400. In a Latin sentence the subject normally stands first and the verb last, with the direct and indirect objects between. The modifiers of the nouns follow the rules given below. Cf. 402–410. The modifiers of the verb precede the verb.

Hīc imperātor equitibus Gallōrum lēgātum cuī cōnfīdēbat statim praefēcit, *this general immediately placed a lieutenant whom he trusted in charge of the cavalry of the Gauls.*

401. But the order of words usually varies from this regularity to emphasize some word or phrase, or to connect the sentence more closely with what precedes or follows. Cf. 41.

***Tibi* hunc librum dō**, *I give you this book, it is to you that I give this book.*
***Ego* tibi hunc librum dō**, *it is I who am giving you this book.*
***Hunc* librum tibi dō**, *this is the book which I give you.*
***Dō* tibi hunc librum**, *I give you this book.*

Modifiers of the Noun

402. If an adjective is emphatic, it usually precedes its noun. Otherwise the noun commonly precedes.

403. Demonstrative, relative, and interrogative adjectives regularly precede their nouns.

404. Possessive adjectives usually follow their nouns unless emphatic.

405. Adjectives of quantity, as well as the commoner adjectives like **bonus**, etc., usually precede their nouns.

406. Cardinal numerals regularly precede their nouns, while ordinals regularly follow.

Duae cohortēs legiōnis septimae.

407. Many adjectives have a fixed position.

Populus Rōmānus, *the Roman people.*
Lingua Lātīna, *the Latin language.*
Dī immortālēs, *the immortal gods.*
Patrēs cōnscrīptī, *the senators.*
Rēs pūblica, *the state.*
Rēs frūmentāria, *the grain supply.*
Novae rēs, *a revolution.*
Cōnsul dēsīgnātus, *the consul elect.*

408. Appositives regularly follow the nouns with which they are in apposition.

409. Dependent genitives, except when relative or interrogative, commonly follow their nouns unless emphatic. Some genitive phrases have a fixed order.

Senātūs cōnsultum, *a decree of the senate.*

410. When a noun is limited by an adjective and a dependent genitive, a common order is, — adjective, genitive, noun.

Multae Galliae gentēs, *many races of Gaul.*

411. Adverbs and adverbial phrases regularly precede the word modified. But **ferē, paene, prope,** usually follow.

412. Postpositives. — 1. **Autem, enim, quidem, quoque,**

vērō, can never come first in the clause. So commonly with **igitur**.

2. **Nē . . . quidem** incloses the emphasized word.

Nē Rōmānī quidem, *not even the Romans.*

3. **Inquam**, *I say*, etc., always comes after one or more words of a direct quotation.

413. Enclitics. — The enclitics **-que, -ne, -ve,** are appended to the first word connected; or, when connecting clauses, to the first word of the connected clause.

414. Prepositions. — Prepositions regularly precede their nouns, but a monosyllabic preposition is often placed between the adjective and its noun. So regularly when the adjective is a relative or interrogative, and in the ablative of manner when **cum** is used.

Quā dē causā, *for which reason, for this reason, therefore.*
Māgnā cum virtūte, *with great courage.*

Order of Words in Simple Sentences and Clauses

415. Interrogatives and relatives regularly placed first in the clause.

416. Words or phrases which serve to connect a clause or sentence with what precedes regularly come first.

***Haec* cum animadvertisset** (B. G. I, 40), *when he had noticed this.*

417. In questions, when **-ne** is appended to the verb, the verb is placed first.

418. The verb **sum** may be placed wherever convenient, much as in English. But when meaning *exist*, it regularly comes first.

419. A complementary infinitive regularly precedes the verb on which it depends, but a negative may intervene.

Dīcere nōn possum, *I cannot tell.*

Order of Words in Compound and Complex Sentences

420. When the same verb would be required in both clauses of a compound or complex sentence, it is commonly expressed but once, unless ambiguity would result.

Quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur (B. G. I, 1), *of these (parts) the Belgians inhabit one, the Aquitanians (inhabit) another, (and) the third (those inhabit) who in their own language are called Celts (and) in our (language are called) Gauls.*

421. When the subject or object (direct or indirect) of the subordinate verb refers to the same person or thing as that of the main verb, it regularly stands first, followed by the subordinate clause.

***Caesar*, cum vēnisset, haec dīxit,** *when Caesar came, he spoke thus.*

422. Temporal, conditional, and concessive clauses commonly precede the main clause.

423. Indirect questions, purpose clauses, and result clauses, commonly follow the main verb.

424. When there are several subordinate clauses, they should be so arranged as to avoid a succession of verbs.

425. A succession of clauses connected by **et**, etc., is to be avoided, and when possible a compound clause should be made a complex sentence by subordinating one or more of the correlative clauses.

Caesar removed the horses of all, addressed his men, and began battle, **Caesar omnium remōtīs equīs cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit.** (B. G. I, 25.)

EXPLANATIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

The references given at the beginning of each lesson are to the sections of the Elements of Syntax, which forms the first part of this book. On page 196 will be found a corresponding set of references to the grammars of Harkness, Allen and Greenough, Bennett, Gildersleeve and Lodge. These references may be used separately, or in connection with the references to the Elements of Syntax.

A special vocabulary for each lesson will be found on pages 177–195. These vocabularies should be carefully learned.

Words which are inclosed in parentheses in the exercises should be omitted in translation.

In preparing a lesson, the references and special vocabulary should be thoroughly mastered before any attempt is made to write the exercise.

PART III

LESSON I

PRONOUNS — ADJECTIVES — AGREEMENT

426. REFERENCES:

1. Pronouns: 16–20, 25–43, 45–56.
2. Adjectives: 1–3.
3. Apposition: 4–7.
4. Relative Agreement: 12–15.
5. Verb Agreement: 8–11.

427. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

1. The Helvetians, who were a tribe of the Gauls, inhabited that part of Gaul which is bounded by the Alps.

2. A certain chief of the Helvetians, named[1] Orgetorix, whose influence among them was very great, had formed a conspiracy.

3. The Helvetians had been influenced by him and other chiefs, and had determined to go forth from their territory.

4. Therefore they had made peace with all the states by which they were bounded, and all the men, women, and children were now ready to go forth.

5. Orgetorix himself had gone as ambassador to those states and (together) with Casticus and Dumnorix had determined to seize the royal power.

6. Of these (men) the former was a Sequanian whose father had been chief of that state, the latter was a chief of the Aeduans.

---

[1] Cf. 143.

7. These men interchanged an oath-bound pledge and attempted to seize the royal power.

8. This was reported to the Helvetians, and they[1] determined to protect themselves and all their (property) against these men.

9. Without any delay they appointed a day and attempted to compel Orgetorix to plead his case in chains.

10. But he came to the trial with all his friends and was saved by them, (a thing) which greatly alarmed the Helvetians.

11. Then the Helvetians attempted by (force of) arms to compel him to plead his case, but on the very day of the trial Orgetorix died.

12. Either his enemies killed him or he killed himself.

13. After the death of Orgetorix his friends fled, some in one direction, others in another.

14. Dumnorix, the brother and at the same time the enemy of Diviciacus, made the same attempt in his state as Orgetorix had made among the Helvetians.

15. He was greatly alarmed by the death of Orgetorix, but through the influence of his brother escaped.

428. CONNECTED PROSE:

Orgetorix (the man) who formed this conspiracy, with (the aid of) Casticus and Dumnorix attempted to seize the royal power. But certain men reported this matter to the Helvetians, and they determined to compel him to plead his cause in chains. On the day of the trial he escaped, but afterward either killed himself or was killed by some enemy.

---

[1] "and they" = "who." Cf. 41.

429. EXERCISE FOR ORAL TRANSLATION

1. Many cities and villages. The cities and villages were small.

2. We who have formed this conspiracy.

3. You and your friends. I shall defend myself and my property.

4. You, your father, and I. From you and me.

5. We were fighting together. You have exchanged hostages.

6. On that very spot. On the self-same day.

7. If he says anything. I could not see anything at all.

8. The conspiracy of that scoundrel. That book of yours.

9. (It was) not I (who) told you, (but) you (who) told me.

10. The one always tells the other. Each one of them.

11. That famous general. He did just what he had said.

12. The men and women whom you see.

LESSON II

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

430. REFERENCES:

1. Present Tense: 201–202.
2. Imperfect Tense: 203–205.
3. Future Tense: 212.
4. Perfect Tense: 206–209.
5. Pluperfect Tense: 210–211.
6. Future Perfect Tense: 213.

431. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

1. After the death of Orgetorix the Helvetians determined to do that which they had now for a long time been preparing to do.

2. There were two routes by which they could go out: one through (the territory of) the Sequanians, the other through the Roman province.

3. First the Helvetians attempted to go through the province, but Caesar with those forces which he had with him in Gaul and the soldiers which he had collected from the province prevented them.

4. Then they attempted to march through (the territory of) the Sequanians, and had already arrived into (the territory of) the Aeduans and were devastating their fields.

5. When Caesar arrived the Helvetians were (in the act of) crossing the river, and the larger part of their forces had already been led across.

6. Caesar made an attack on the rest, and a large number of the enemy was killed by the Romans.

7. Then Divico and other ambassadors were sent to Caesar, and they treated him as follows:

8. "If you make peace with us, we will be friends of the Roman people, and will stay in the place where you wish us to be."

9. "If you remember the former valor with which the Helvetians were accustomed[1] to fight, you will do this."

10. To this Caesar answered thus: "I remember those things which you have said, but I cannot grant you a passage through the province, for that neither I nor the Roman people is accustomed[2] to do."

11. "But if you will give hostages and will render satisfaction to the Aeduans, I will make peace with you."

---

[1] Express in two ways.

[2] With disjunctives the verb agrees with the nearest subject.

12. Divico answered, "The Helvetians are accustomed to receive, not to give hostages."

13. Neither Caesar nor Divico was willing to make peace, but both the former and the latter were ready for war.

14. On the following day the Helvetians broke camp. The Roman army did the same, and the cavalry began to follow the enemy.

15. For many days now they have been following the enemy, and they now know where the Helvetians have pitched[1] camp.

432. CONNECTED PROSE:

Orgetorix had died, but nevertheless the Helvetians prepared to go out from their territory. The route through the Roman province was blocked by the fortifications which Caesar had made. Therefore they prepared to march through (the territory of) the Sequanians, and a great number of them had crossed the river. But Caesar's soldiers killed a large part of the rest, and compelled the Helvetians to send ambassadors (to treat) concerning peace.

433. EXERCISE FOR ORAL TRANSLATION

1. We are accustomed to receive hostages.
2. Caesar had already learned this. Caesar knew this.
3. They have now for a long time been preparing to go out from their territory.
4. For two years they had been attempting to do this.
5. A multitude of men arrived.

[1] Cf. 251.

6. Many villages, towns, and cities were burned.

7. You and I remember all this.

8. The cavalry[1] had been sent ahead and the infantry[1] followed.

9. You who have done this will be killed.

10. If he does this, he will be killed.

LESSON III

THE ACCUSATIVE CASE

434. REFERENCES:

1. Direct Object: 60–61.
2. With Compound Verbs: 62–63.
3. Cognate Accusative: 64.
4. Inner Object: 65–66.
5. Extent: 73–74, 169, 199–200.
6. Limit of Motion: 187, 190–191.
7. Double Accusative: 67–72.
8. Exclamation: 77.

435. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

1. For fifteen days Caesar followed the forces of the Helvetians which had crossed the river and were marching through the Aeduans' territory.

2. During all these days he kept asking the Aeduans for the grain which they had promised, for he had for many days been wondering at their delay.

3. Finally he called to him certain Aeduans, the chiefs of the state, and inquired of them the cause of the delay.

4. This[2] the Aeduans attempted to conceal from him; but finally Liscus, who seemed braver than the rest, spoke as follows:[3]

---

[1] What number will the verbs be if **equitātus** and **peditātus** are used? If **equitēs** and **peditēs** are used?

[2] Cf. 41.

[3] "spoke as follows" = "said these (things)."

5. "Dumnorix, whom the people call their friend, has more influence than the rest of the chiefs of the Aeduans and is holding back the grain."

6. Caesar made the same inquiries from the other chiefs; each one entertained the same opinion and made the same reply as Liscus (had made).

7. Caesar then called to him Diviciacus and Dumnorix, of whom the former had always remained the friend of the Romans, (while) the latter was considered their enemy.

8. Caesar then said, "You, Dumnorix, have made many promises, but you do not send the grain; therefore I give you this warning — if you remain an enemy of the Romans, you will be killed."

9. On that day scouts informed Caesar that the enemy had pitched camp at the foot of a hill. In this place the Romans could surround them.

10. Caesar had been waiting for this for fifteen days, for he was afraid to make an attack on so great a number of men in the open plain.

11. Therefore he surrounded the enemy's camp with his troops and prepared to make an attack on them from all sides at one time.

12. Considius, whom Caesar considered the bravest of all the scouts, had been ordered[1] to give the signal for the attack.

13. But when the Romans had surrounded the enemy, Considius announced that the enemy's camp was not at the foot of the hill but on the hill, (a thing) which was not true.

---

[1] Use **iubeō**.

14. Therefore the attack was not made, and the Helvetians broke camp and said to each other, "The Romans despaired of victory even when they had surrounded us with their forces."

15. After this day Caesar and the soldiers entertained the same opinion about Considius and never afterward considered him the bravest scout.

436. CONNECTED PROSE:

On the next day Caesar did not follow the Helvetians, but set out for a town of the Aeduans in which there was a large supply of grain. The enemy then prepared to make an attack on Caesar, who drew up his forces on a hill and waited for them. The enemy could not surround Caesar with their greater multitude, and so, when the battle had lasted[1] a long time, they were defeated. After the battle the Helvetians fled for many miles, but on the third day sent ambassadors and asked for peace.

437. EXERCISE FOR ORAL TRANSLATION

1 *a*. We have chosen the one as commander, the other we have elected consul.

b. The one has been chosen as commander, the other has been elected consul.

2. We have called him king and friend, but he has remained our enemy.

3. The latter shuddered at this conspiracy; the former laughed at it.

4. The ambassadors asked the general for peace, and he demanded hostages of them.

---

[1] "it had been fought."

5 *a*. They have made many inquiries. We have made no reply.

b. They have made many demands from you. What reply have you made?

6. Orgetorix had been made leader of the Helvetians.

7. The scouts shuddered at the troops of the enemy.

8. He tried to conceal himself from his friends.

9. He has crossed the river. He will lead his troops across the river.

10. They have prepared for war, but they despair of victory.

LESSON IV

QUESTIONS: DIRECT AND INDIRECT — SEQUENCE OF TENSES

438. REFERENCES:

1. Direct Questions, Indicative: 214–217.
2. Deliberative and Dubitative Questions: 218.
3. Rhetorical Questions: 219–220.
4. Double Disjunctive Questions: 221–222.
5. Answers: 223–225.
6. Indirect Questions: 251–252.
7. Sequence of Tenses: 242–246.

439. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

1. Caesar made these inquiries from the ambassadors who came to him from many states of Gaul after the Helvetian war.

2. Have not the Sequanians and the Aeduans been fighting with each other for many years? "Yes," replied the ambassadors.

3. Which of these (two) tribes has chosen Ariovis-

tus and the Germans as allies against the other? "The Sequanians," replied the Gauls.

4. Why should the Sequanians, who have conquered the Aeduans with Ariovistus's aid, be grieving at their fortune?

5. The ambassadors then asked Caesar whether he knew what sort of a man that Ariovistus was, and that he had made the lands of the Sequanians his province.

6. Caesar then asked, "Won't Ariovistus lead his troops back across the Rhine? He isn't going to remain in Gaul, is he?"

7. "What shall I do?" asked Caesar. "Shall I permit this German to dwell in the land of our allies? If the Gauls fear him and shudder at his cruelty, why may he not try to come into Italy?"

8. Caesar therefore asked Ariovistus through ambassadors whether he intended to remain in Gaul or lead his troops back across the Rhine.

9. Ariovistus made this reply: "Why should you, Caesar, come into my Gaul, which I have conquered?

10. If you wish to know what I intend to do, come to the place where I am, and you will learn.

11. If I am not accustomed to direct the Romans (as to) how they shall rule their province, why should they try to direct me (as to) how I shall rule the Sequanians?

12. If you come and contend with me in battle, then you will learn how powerful the Germans are in war."

13. After this message Caesar determined to lead his army against Ariovistus and to try (to see) whether[1] he would then speak with the same boldness.

---

[1] After **cōnor** and **exspectō** *whether* is translated by **sī**.

14. He then came to Vesontio, and from the citizens of that town the soldiers learned how large and how brave in war the Germans were.

15. They shuddered at that which they heard, and asked Caesar whether he intended to fight with such men or not.

440. CONNECTED PROSE:

Caesar called a meeting of the soldiers and centurions and spoke as follows: "Ariovistus and his Germans are the same race that our fathers conquered. These Germans were not able, were they, to conquer the Helvetians, whom you have conquered? Why should you be afraid of the same men? Ariovistus did indeed conquer the Gauls, but strategy, not greater courage, gave him the victory. Who thinks that a German's strategy can deceive me, a Roman general? This night I shall set out toward the enemy and try (to see) whether your fear or your (sense of) duty will conquer."

441. EXERCISE FOR ORAL TRANSLATION

1 *a*. Did Caesar begin battle on the left wing?

b. Caesar didn't begin battle on the left wing, did he? Didn't he begin battle on the right wing?

2 *a*. Who can endure the boldness of Ariovistus?

b. Who could have endured the boldness of Ariovistus?

3. Caesar said to himself, "Shall I renew the battle or make peace?"

4. Did Caesar conquer two enemies in one year or not? How many times did he fight?

5. Every one wondered whether Caesar had conquered two enemies in one year or not.

6. Caesar was waiting (to see) whether the enemy would fight or not.

7. Caesar asked the tenth legion whether they were afraid of the Germans.

8. What is he doing? I wonder what he is doing. I wondered what he was doing.

9. What did he do? I wonder what he did. I wondered what he had done.

10. What is he going to do? I wonder what he is going to do. I wondered what he was going to do.

LESSON V

PURPOSE AND RESULT CLAUSES

442. REFERENCES:

1. Purpose Clauses: 253–257.
2. Substantive Clauses of Purpose: 261–263.
3. Result Clauses: 258–260.
4. Substantive Clauses of Result: 264.
5. Negatives: 265.

443. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

1. By Caesar's speech the minds of all were so changed that the soldiers begged him to make an attack on the Germans at once.

2. Therefore Caesar set out during the fourth watch, but Ariovistus learned of this and sent ambassadors to ask him to treat with him concerning affairs in[1] Gaul.

3. He demanded that no foot soldier be led to the conference, and that Caesar come with horsemen only.

---

[1] "of."

4. Caesar could not do this without exposing himself to great danger, for all his horsemen were Gauls.

5. Therefore, that he might the more safely go to the conference, he commanded the soldiers of the tenth legion to go with him on horseback.[1]

6. In the conference Caesar tried to persuade Ariovistus to return into Germany, and demanded that he should not inflict any injury on the Aeduans.

7. Ariovistus thus replied: "The Gauls themselves urged me to cross the Rhine, and I did this to aid them against their neighbors."

8. At this time it happened that the cavalry of Ariovistus made an attack on Caesar's horsemen and hurled their javelins at them.

9. Caesar warned his men not to hurl any weapon back at the enemy and did not permit[2] the soldiers to fight.

10. Three days[3] after this conference Ariovistus moved his camp with this plan, that he might cut Caesar off from his supplies.

11. It remained for Caesar to move his camp and make the enemy fight so that he might not be cut off from his supplies.

12. The Romans made so fierce an attack that the enemy could not withstand them, and the result was that all the Germans fled.

13. It happened that Procillus and Metius escaped from the Germans so that no one of Caesar's friends was killed.

14. Caesar employed the cavalry to overtake the Ger-

---

[1] "on horseback" = "on horses." [3] Cf. 174.

[2] Write four times, using **permittō, patior, sinō, vetō.**

mans, and the cavalry brought it about that few of the enemy escaped.

15. Added to this was the fact that the camp of Ariovistus was captured; and of his two daughters one was killed, the other captured.

444. CONNECTED PROSE:

When the Aeduans and the Arverni had been fighting together for many years, it happened that the Arverni and the Sequanians sent for the Germans to aid them. Ariovistus, the king of the Germans, had therefore crossed the Rhine with all his forces, but he was so barbarous and cruel that the Gauls were forced to beg Caesar to aid them. This Caesar did, and made the Germans retreat across the Rhine.

445. EXERCISE FOR ORAL TRANSLATION

1. He did this that he might the more easily capture the city.
2. It remains for us to beg peace from them.
3. He is so cruel that no one can endure him.
4. He ordered that no one go forth from the city.
5. It happened that there was nothing in the town at that time.
6. There are so many soldiers that we cannot defend ourselves.
7. The senate decreed that he should send aid.
8. I shall ask him not to send aid.
9. He is said to have done this, that no one might escape.
10. I do not know why he sent men to do this.
11. Caesar freed Dumnorix on this condition, that after that time he should avoid suspicion.

LESSON VI

THE DATIVE CASE

446. REFERENCES:

1. Indirect Object: 78.
2. Dative with Special Verbs: 79–82.
3. Dative with Compound Verbs: 83–84.
4. Dative of the Possessor: 85–86.
5. Dative of Purpose: 90–91.
6. Dative with Adjectives: 92–96.
7. Dative of Reference: 87.

447. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

1. Several of the Belgian states desired a revolution, and these men with others persuaded the Belgians to make war on the Roman people.

2. This matter was reported to Caesar, and he immediately commanded the Senones, who were nearest to the Belgians, to inform him (of) what the Belgians did.

3. The Remi, who of the Belgian tribes were nearest to the Gauls, sent ambassadors to Caesar to say that they were friendly to the Romans and were ready to obey Caesar's commands.

4. "The Bellovaci," they said, "are the most powerful of all the Belgians and have demanded for themselves the command of the whole war."

5. The Suessiones have a king, Galba by name, and this man the Belgians have put in charge of all their forces to look out for their interests and resist the power of the Romans.

6. Caesar trusted and believed the Remi, whose friendship pleased him; but nevertheless he demanded[1] hostages of them.

7. The Belgians began to attack Bibrax, the largest

[1] Use **imperō**. Cf. 79.

town of the Remi; and Iccius, who was in charge of the town, sent a messenger to Caesar to ask for aid.

8. Caesar immediately sent soldiers to aid[1] the Remi, and himself with great speed hastened toward the town and chose a spot suitable for a camp.

9. Meanwhile the Aeduans were approaching the territory of the Bellovăci, and the latter could not be persuaded to remain longer.

10. Therefore during the second watch they set out from their camp with so much disorder that their departure seemed like a flight.

11. This fact was reported to Caesar and at daybreak he sent ahead Pedius, who was in command of the cavalry, and he[2] killed a great number of the Bellovaci.

12. On the following day Caesar hastened to Noviodunum, a town of the Suessiones well fortified by nature, and began to prepare everything which was useful for a siege.

13. The Suessiones (were) alarmed by these things (and) sent ambassadors to say that they were ready to yield to Caesar and obey all his commands.

14. Caesar pardoned their wrongs and spared them, but that they might not afterward make war on the Roman people he demanded[3] hostages of them.

15. Thus a tribe hostile to the Romans (was) defeated in a short time (and) was forced to obey Caesar's commands.

448. CONNECTED PROSE:

The Belgians, who were a tribe hostile to the Roman people, were persuaded by their chiefs to form a con-

[1] Cf. 90–91. [2] Cf. 33. [3] Use imperō. Cf. 79.

spiracy. But the Remi, who were a tribe of the Belgians, favored the Romans and reported this conspiracy to Caesar. He immediately went to the aid of the allies of the Roman people and quickly forced the Belgians and their friends to sue for peace. Still the Belgians were pardoned by Caesar, and they were given fields in the territory of the Aeduans.

449. EXERCISE FOR ORAL TRANSLATION

1. Few men are like Caesar. A city dear to the Romans.

2. The soldiers obey the general. The general is obeyed by the soldiers.

3. Caesar pardons the Belgians. The Belgians are pardoned by Caesar.

4. I gave him a book. He was given a book by me. I was given a book.

5. They ask his advice, and he[1] consults their interests.

6. Caesar put him in command of the legion. He was put in command of the legion by Caesar. He is in command of the legion.

7. I will take care of that matter. The baggage was a great hindrance to the army.

8. You gave me a sword. You sent me a sword. I was sent a sword.

9. Caesar appointed a day for battle. I shall appoint a day for a conference.

10. Arms useful for war. A hill opposite and facing the city.

---

[1] ille.

LESSON VII

CLAUSES AFTER VERBS OF FEARING, PREVENTING, DOUBTING, ETC.—CHARACTERISTIC CLAUSES

450. REFERENCES:

1. Clauses after Verbs of Fearing: 266–268.
2. Clauses after Verbs of Preventing, etc.: 269–271.
3. Clauses after Verbs of Doubting: 272–273.
4. Characteristic Clauses: 274–276.

451. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

1. There are some who consider the Nervii worthy of being called the bravest of all the Gauls.

2. These same Nervii were the only ones who had refused to send hostages to Caesar.

3. Therefore he decided to conquer them in order to prevent other tribes from joining with them.

4. Nevertheless there were some who did join with them, and in that region there was none who did not wish Caesar to be defeated.

5. Caesar did not doubt that he could conquer these tribes, and so did not hesitate to advance into the territory of the Nervii at once.

6. Each day he sent scouts ahead to choose a place suitable for pitching a camp.[1]

7. On the third day these scouts brought back (such) a message as[2] not even Caesar could hear without great fear.

8. For in those places where the army then was there were fortifications (such) as[2] could prevent the Romans from drawing up their troops.

---

[1] "a suitable place in which a camp might be pitched."

[2] "as" = "which."

9. Caesar was afraid that they would make an attack on him, and he likewise feared that his troops could not withstand the attack.

10. He therefore proceeded to the river Sabis and drew up his forces on a hill which could be fortified.

11. Meanwhile the forest across the river concealed the enemy's forces, and a few horsemen were the only ones who could be seen.

12. However, when the enemy saw our troops they did not hesitate to cross the river, nor did they fear to advance to our very camp.

13. There were some whom the legions easily drove back across the river and even into the forest. The Nervii were the only ones who were not easily defeated.

14. The two legions which had been left to guard the camp could not withstand the attack of the Nervii, and even Caesar feared that the camp would be captured.

15. But the enemy were prevented from capturing the camp, for at that very time the rest of the legions returned and put them to flight.

452. CONNECTED PROSE:

Caesar did not consider his cavalry worthy of being sent into a sharp fight, for he always feared that they would not resist the enemy bravely. There was no band of foot soldiers which could not put them to flight. Caesar himself could not prevent them from fleeing from the enemy's infantry, but when this same infantry had been put to flight, the cavalry never hesitated to pursue and kill them.

453. EXERCISE FOR ORAL TRANSLATION

1. Why should he hesitate to begin battle on the right wing?

2. Who is there who is afraid to cross the river?

3. They were afraid that they would be defeated. I was afraid that they would not be defeated.

4. They did not doubt that the general would be informed of the meeting.

5. Dumnorix will not prevent us from asking the Aeduans for grain, but he will prevent them from sending it.

6. We shall pitch our camp in a place such as[1] we can easily fortify.

7. There were some who remained in the forest.

8. There was no one who did not hesitate.

9. Those who advanced are worthy of being praised by the general.

10. The Nervii were the only ones who bravely resisted our legions.

LESSON VIII

GERUND — GERUNDIVE — PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION — SUPINE

454. REFERENCES:

1. Gerund: 376, 381.
2. Gerundive: 377–382.
3. Supines: 390–393.
4. Passive Periphrastic: 383–388.

455. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

1. This year Caesar had to conquer many Gallic tribes; for the purpose of accomplishing this, he had to send his legions into many parts of Gaul.

---

[1] "such as" = "which."

2. Galba had to go among the Seduni. When he had made a beginning of fortifying the camp there, the Gauls adopted the plan of making war on the Roman legions.

3. Galba's forces were not prepared to withstand the attack of so great a number, because many cohorts had gone from the camp for the purpose of seeking supplies.

4. Therefore Galba called a council of the centurions and asked what was to be done. They all said that they ought to remain inside the fortifications and await the enemy's attack.

5. But the Gauls made the attack so quickly that the centurions were not given time for stationing the soldiers on the fortifications.

6. Moreover, the number of the enemy was so great that the soldiers even (when) exhausted with wounds were given no chance to retire from the wall.

7. Therefore they made a sudden sally from all the gates and put the Gauls to flight. Thus the Gauls who had had hopes of crushing the Romans had themselves to withdraw.

8. Crassus, who was wintering near the sea, had to look after the army's grain supply; but the ambassadors whom he had sent to the Veneti to seek supplies were seized.

9. The Veneti knew how great a crime they had committed, and therefore arranged for ships to be built, and prepared everything which was useful for waging war.

10. The difficulty of waging war in these places was very great, for Caesar did not have ships suitable for navigating in such a sea.

11. Nevertheless he decided that he ought to defeat

the Veneti, for he remembered that his ambassadors had been held back by them — a thing which did not seem endurable.

12. For a large part of the year Caesar captured towns abandoned by the Veneti, but his hopes of defeating the Veneti themselves always failed him.

13. Therefore he had to wait for those ships which he had arranged to be built.

14. When they had come, the Veneti had to contend in a great naval battle because Caesar was prepared either to fight or to follow.

15. When all their ships had been destroyed in one battle by Caesar, the Veneti had to surrender all their towns because they had no further[1] chance to defend them.

456. CONNECTED PROSE:

At the same time, Sabinus had to wage war with large forces of the Venelli, who had come into the hope of crushing the Roman legions. The number of the enemy was so great that Sabinus had to contend rather by strategy than by valor. He announced this plan of fighting to his centurions, "We must persuade some one to announce to the Venelli that we are not prepared for fighting." This was reported to the enemy, who then advanced to conquer the Romans, but were themselves defeated.

457. EXERCISE FOR ORAL TRANSLATION

1. Sabinus had to be sent against the Venelli.

2. Sabinus must wait for an opportunity to make a sally.

3. He must remain in camp. He must not depart.

[1] "further" = **alius.**

4. Sabinus must persuade a certain Gaul to announce this.

5. Love of fighting. For the sake of defending themselves. By abandoning their towns they escaped.

6. A chance for crushing the Gallic forces was offered to Caesar.

7. This swamp was not suitable for pitching a camp.

8. After the battle this is the best (thing) to do.

9. Some came to ask for help; others came to complain of wrongs.

10. One part of the army was given to Galba to be led against the Seduni.

LESSON IX

THE GENITIVE CASE

458. REFERENCES:

1. Possession: 97–98, 100.
2. Description (Quality): 101–103.
3. Partitive Genitive: 104–107.
4. **Summus, Medius,** etc.: 108.
5. Objective Genitive with Nouns: 110–112.
6. Objective Genitive with Adjectives: 113–115.

459. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

1. The tribe of the Suabians was by far the greatest of all the Germans and the most fond of war, and every year they used to lead to war a hundred thousand armed (men).

2. They allowed no wine or other things to be brought into their country, and by daily training they had become (capable) of the greatest labor.

3. The Usipetes and Tencteri, who were of the same race, had been driven from their territory by the Suabians and had seized a part of Gaul.

4. Caesar, who was familiar with the customs of the Gauls and Germans, heard of this and immediately decided to wage war with the Germans.

5. When he was a few days' march from the Germans, ambassadors were sent to him to say that it was the custom of the Germans to resist their enemies.

6. Caesar thus replied: "It is not my custom nor (that) of the Roman people to grant fields in Gaul to any one. Those who cannot defend their own fields ought not to seize the fields of others."

7. It is not (befitting) my dignity[1] nor (that) of the Roman people not to defend the fields of all of our allies from their enemies.

8. The ambassadors asked for a three days' delay; but Caesar knew that a large part of the enemy's cavalry was absent, and that (it was) for this (that) they were desirous of a delay.

9. Therefore the next day he marched (on) into the territory of the enemy, and when he was about twelve miles from them the ambassadors returned to him and again demanded a three days' delay.

10. But the cavalry of the enemy, whose number was eight hundred, attacked our (men), and seventy-four of our horsemen were killed.

11. It was the height of madness[2] to delay longer, and so on the following day Caesar made an attack on the Germans' camp which had been pitched on the top of a hill.

12. The men resisted the Romans, but the rest of the

---

[1] Cf. 109. [2] "It was of the utmost madness."

multitude (composed) of women and children fled. For the Germans had set out with all of their (people).

13. When this war with the Germans had been finished, Caesar decided to cross the Rhine, (an undertaking) which was (one) of the greatest difficulty.

14. The Sugambri asked him what his design was and what business he had across the Rhine; but the Ubii asked for Caesar's aid, and he did not refuse (it).

15. He made a bridge of huge size, led all of his army across, and subdued the larger part of the German tribes.

460. CONNECTED PROSE:

Caesar feared that the Germans would become accustomed to cross the Rhine and would seize a large part of Gaul. That the allies of the Romans should be thus harassed was (befitting) neither his own dignity[1] nor (that) of the Roman people. Therefore he defeated the Germans who had already crossed, and, that others might not be led across, he built a bridge and waged war with the Germans in their own territory. Most of the German states made peace with Caesar, who then withdrew into Gaul and destroyed the bridge.

461. EXERCISE FOR ORAL TRANSLATION

1. Wars with the Gauls. A friend of all of us. The town of Geneva.

2. A ten-mile march. A six-foot wall. A war of this sort.

3. Who of us? Ten of us. All of us. Enough power.

[1] Cf. 109.

4. During the first part of the summer. The rest of the enemy. It is my (duty) to do this.

5. Your good will toward me. Unskilled in law. Forgetful of us. A leader of the enemy.

6. The memory of those wrongs. A desire for praise. The forum is full of citizens.

7. Of these (men) the one was a general, the other a consul.

8. You will have a sufficient guard.

9. Is any one of us ignorant (of) what plan you adopted?

10. He has as much power as you. The width of this river is one hundred feet.

LESSON X

THE GENITIVE CASE (*Concluded*)

462. REFERENCES:

1. With Verbs of Memory, etc.: 116.
2. With Verbs of Reminding, etc.: 117.
3. With Verbs of Emotion: 118–120.
4. With Verbs of Accusing, etc.: 121.
5. Indefinite Value: 122–123.
6. With **Interest** and **Rĕfert**: 124.

463. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

1. Caesar recalled the wars with the Gauls and remembered the wrongs which the Britons had committed in those wars.

2. He wished to make the Britons repent those wrongs and therefore considered it of the greatest (importance) to transport his army across into Britain.

3. The Britons (were) warned of his plans through merchants (and) thought that it was to their interests to

send ambassadors to Caesar for the purpose of seeking peace.

4. Caesar told the ambassadors of the wrongs of which he accused the Britons and sent them back together with a certain Commius, whose influence in those districts was considered of great (value).

5. It was to Caesar's advantage not to leave any enemy behind him, and so he pardoned the Morini and told them that he would forget the things which they had done.

6. Meanwhile the Morini, who (being) ignorant of our customs had made war on the Romans, repented their plans and sent ambassadors to Caesar.

7. Then Caesar set sail with a large number of soldiers and soon approached the shore of Britain, where he saw the tops of the hills covered with thousands of armed (men).

8. Therefore he proceeded about seven miles from that place and ordered the soldiers to disembark. This was (an undertaking) of the greatest difficulty, for the enemy tried to prevent them.

9. But the standard bearer of the tenth legion reminded the soldiers of their former valor and of their duty, and then they were ashamed of their fear.

10. Finally the Britons (were) overcome (and) again sent ambassadors to Caesar, who condemned them for their misdeeds, but had pity on them and pardoned them.

11. But some of Caesar's ships were destroyed by a storm, and the Britons, who thought that this was a good opportunity, forgot their surrender and attacked a part of Caesar's soldiers.

12. Caesar, who had thought that the Britons would adopt some new plan, had his soldiers ready in arms and immediately sent them to aid his (men).

13. Several of the enemy were killed, but the rest of their forces retreated into camp and on the same day sent an embassy to Caesar for the sake of making peace.

14. Caesar thought it of little importance to remain longer in Britain, and therefore received the Britons in surrender and returned into Gaul.

15. When about three hundred of our (soldiers) had disembarked, the Morini, forgetful of those things which they had promised, made an attack on Caesar's soldiers, but were easily defeated.

464. CONNECTED PROSE:

These were Caesar's reasons for crossing over into Britain: first, because he did not think it (worthy) of his dignity nor (that) of the Roman people, to forget the things which the Britons had done. Moreover, Caesar wished to make the Britons remember the power of the Roman people and repent those injuries. Finally, he considered that it was of the greatest importance to learn about the people, harbors, and customs of the Britons.

465. EXERCISE FOR ORAL TRANSLATION

1. I cannot remember all this. I shall forget my speech.

2. I shall remind you of your speech if I can recall it.

3. He is ashamed of this. He is tired of war.

4. He was accused of a conspiracy and was condemned for the wrongs of which he was accused.

5. It is to my interest and (that) of the general to do this.

6. The depth of that river was eight feet.

7. All of us. Ten of us. No one of us.

8. A desire for praise. Desirous of praise. Mindful of you.

9. In the middle of the city. On the end of the wall.

10. This is of no great importance to you, but is greatly to my interest.

LESSON XI

CONDITIONS

466. REFERENCES:

1. General Statement: 298–300.
2. Logical Conditions: 301–302, 311.
3. Ideal Conditions: 303–304.
4. Unreal Conditions: 305–310.
5. Protasis implied: 312.

467. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

1. If this most (strongly) fortified place of holding the senate does not move you, Catiline, you are a conspirator of the utmost daring.

2. If the consul has watched more sharply for the safety of the state than you (have) for its destruction, he has learned what plans you have adopted.

3. If the senate has decreed that the consul see to it that the state suffer[1] no harm, why should I hesitate to obey the senate's decree?

4. Should I drive you into exile, you would be considered unfortunate; but if you were to go to Manlius, all would see that you are planning the state's destruction.

5. If I put you to death, Catiline, a storm of unpopu-

[1] capiō.

larity will hang over me; if I do not put you to death, my country will condemn me for my inactivity.

6. If our native land knew what sentiment you hold concerning the state, you would not now be a participant in the public deliberations.

7. Had I considered this the best thing to do, that you be killed, I would not have given you one day to plot the destruction of us all.

8. There are some who do not believe that a conspiracy has been made; these[1] would be calling me a tyrant if I had killed you.

9. If all (men) had believed that you were forming the greatest conspiracy within the memory of man, I would not have needed to hesitate to kill you.

10. Even if I were now a private citizen, nevertheless I ought to remain in the city and be looking out for the state.

11. If I had obeyed the decree of the senate and had put you to death, Catiline, I could not have driven out of the city the rest of the band of conspirators.

12. You, Catiline, (if) sent forth to the camp of Manlius, will take with you the sharers in your crime, and all will see that a conspiracy has been made.

13. A consul would be showing[2] small gratitude to his country, if any fear of unpopularity should prevent him from putting to death men who are plotting the state's destruction.[3]

14. If the chief men of the state had not feared that you were preparing to kill them, would they have fled for the purpose of saving themselves?

---

[1] Cf. 41. [2] referō. [3] perniciēs, -ēī, f.

15. If you should go to Manlius's camp, Catiline, you would have a chance to show[1] how bravely you can endure hunger and want of everything.

468. CONNECTED PROSE:

The senate decreed that the consul should provide for the safety of the state. If in accordance with this decree I had put you to death or sent you into exile, the rest of your band of conspirators would have remained, and I should have had to endure a storm of unpopularity. But if you lead an army against Rome, as[2] you have now for a long time wished (to do), if you make war on your native land, there will be no one who will not consider you as an enemy, and no one who will not praise my diligence.

469. EXERCISE FOR ORAL TRANSLATION

1. If he obeys the general, he will be praised.

2. If he does not obey the general, he will be put to death.

3. Unless the general were brave,

(*a*) he would not be thought worthy of being obeyed.

(*b*) he would not be obeyed.

(*c*) the soldiers would not obey him.

4. If we should avoid battle, the enemy would surround us; but if we make an attack, they will retreat.

5. If there is any danger, he does not see it. *Convert this sentence into all the various forms of conditional sentences and translate each.*

6. If any one were to tell me that, I should go forth from the city.

---

[1] "have a chance to show" = "have where you might show."

[2] Cf. 15.

7. Even if he were afraid to go, yet he ought to be sent.

8. If we had given him a larger army, he could have saved the city.

9. If the enemy's forces are divided, we shall conquer.

10. If we had chosen him as commander, we should now be safe.

11. Catiline, (if he is) sent forth from the city, will plot its destruction.

12. If he finishes this war in one year, he will deserve to be praised.

LESSON XII

WISHES — POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE — CONDITIONAL CLAUSES OF COMPARISON

470. REFERENCES:

1. Wishes (Optative Subjunctive): 226–231.
2. Potential Subjunctive: 232–235, 219.
3. Conditional Clauses of Comparison: 313.

471. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

1. When Cicero had called together the senate, Catiline came (along) with the rest just as if he were worthy of being made a participant in the public deliberations.

2. You could have seen that Cicero wondered at the daring of the man, for he began his oration as if he were moved by hatred of Catiline.

3. "You, Catiline," said Cicero, "desire to destroy this city just as if it were a city of the enemy. Why should I permit you to live longer?"

4. Would that I had put you to death before. I would that all men would believe you to be a wicked citizen!

5. Some one may ask why I have not arrested Catiline and led him to death. To those I would gladly make this answer.

6. I would that all citizens desired Catiline's death; but one would scarcely believe that so many citizens favor Catiline.

7. Furthermore, I should prefer that he leave Rome and take with him all his associates in crime rather than that he die and leave all his followers in the city.

8. Some one may ask what I know concerning Catiline's conspiracy. "Why," they ask, "should you be addressing him as if he were an enemy of the state?"

9. May these men listen carefully to what I am going to say! I know, just as if I myself had been present, that Catiline addressed his companions thus.

10. "I should like to set out to Manlius. Would that I had some one to[1] put in charge of the burning of Rome and the killing of Cicero!"

11. Would that no one had been found to try to accomplish these things, but many wished to undertake the task as if it had been an honor.

12. I would that Catiline would set out to Manlius! Would that he had left Rome, and that he were now in the camp of the enemy!

13. I should prefer that he take with him all his associates! I would that we could call them soldiers of the enemy rather than fellow-citizens!

14. Then we might consider the city safe and ourselves

---

[1] "whom I might put in charge."

free from danger. But why, Catiline, should I urge you to go to Manlius?

15. If I have hitherto acted as if I feared the unpopularity arising[1] from great severity, who now can deny that I have done what was best (to do)?

472. CONNECTED PROSE:

One might have supposed that Cicero was watching not for the safety of the state, but for his own (safety). He, the consul, hesitated to kill Catiline, just as if the senate had not ordered him to look out for the safety of the state. But after this speech who could doubt that he acted with great foresight?

473. EXERCISE FOR ORAL TRANSLATION

1. Would that he would come at once! Would that he had come at once!

2. May he return to Italy! I would that he were returning to Italy!

3. I should prefer that he make no reply. I should prefer that he were making no reply. I should prefer that he had made no reply.

4. Some one will say. Some one may say.

5. Who can believe such a messenger? Who could have believed such a messenger?

6. You might hear the shouting in the forum.

7. You might have thought him to be the general.

8. He speaks with me as if I were his friend. He spoke to me as if I had been his friend. He speaks as if he had been elected consul.

9. May all who survive come as witnesses!

[1] "arising from" = "of."

LESSON XIII

COMMANDS — ENTREATIES — PROHIBITIONS

474. REFERENCES:

1. Commands: 237–239, 241. 2. Prohibitions: 240, 241.
3. Hortatory Subjunctive: 236.

475. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

1. Catiline has at last been driven out of the city, fellow-citizens, but do not think that he has abandoned his designs of fire and slaughter.

2. Remember that his associates in[1] crime are still with us and, as you have done heretofore, defend your homes and this city, and be not afraid.

3. To these men I give this advice:[2] let them depart from the city at once; let them not permit Catiline to wait for them in vain.

4. Let Catiline collect his followers in(to) the camp of Manlius, if he will; but let him not try to oppose those forces to our army.

5. But if he does make that attempt,[3] do not hesitate, fellow-citizens; lead out against him the legions which are now being gathered for us.

6. Let us not, however, fear that army of Catiline's, but let us prepare to drive out the conspirators who have remained in the city.

7. Let them either go forth or cease to conspire against the city, and to think of nothing except fire and slaughter.

---

[1] "in" = "of." Cf. 113–114.

[2] "give them this advice" = "advise them this."

[3] "make that attempt" = "attempt that."

8. Or if they remain in the city and in the same (frame of) mind, let them expect the punishment which they deserve.

9. If, however, these men do remain in the city and in the same (state of) mind, know that we shall always be in great danger.

10. Recall what classes of men Catiline has gathered together, and judge whether men of that sort can harm the state or not.

11. Some say that I drove Catiline into exile by my words.[1] But believe me, Catiline does not intend to go into exile.

12. Let it be said that Catiline was cast out of the city by me, but let him not think that I now fear the unpopularity arising from that term.[2]

13. Yet these (are the words which) I said to him: "Set forth from the city, Catiline; do not delay. Lead forth with you all your followers. Free the city from fear."

14. Do not forget that I, the consul, am keeping a sharp watch for the safety of the state and cease to attempt to destroy it.

15. If with such words (as these) I drove Catiline into exile, let us rejoice and hope that his followers will likewise depart from the city.

476. CONNECTED PROSE:

Cicero in the first oration against Catiline spoke as follows: "Change that purpose of yours, Catiline, and give up your thought of[3] murder and fire. Depart from the

[1] "voice." [2] "unpopularity of that word."

[3] "give up your thought of" = "forget."

city and free the state from fear; betake yourself to Manlius and make war on your native land; let your followers depart with you, and let no wicked man remain in the city."

477. EXERCISE FOR ORAL TRANSLATION

1. Believe the consul. *Conjugate this in the imperative constructions affirmative on the model given in* 241.

2. Do not hesitate. *Conjugate this on the imperative constructions negative on the model given in* 241.

3. Consult your own interests; preserve yourselves; defend the name and safety of the Roman people.

4. See (to it), fellow-citizens, that the state does not suffer any harm.

5. Let us decide at once; let us not delay. Do not delay.

6. Tell me what you wish, Catiline; don't be afraid to speak.

7. Know, Catiline, that I shall keep a sharp watch for the safety of the state.

8. Remember what I have told you, my friend; . . . my friends.

9. Do not cease to defend your homes, fellow-citizens.

10. Let them say that if they wish.

LESSON XIV

THE INFINITIVE

478. REFERENCES:

1. Infinitive as Subject: 323–324.
2. Infinitive as Object: 331–332.
3. Infinitive with Impersonal Verbs: 325–327.
4. Complementary Infinitive: 328–330.

479. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

1. I ought not to have spoken so long about an enemy who has already left the city and is now hastening to go to the camp of Manlius.

2. (As for) those who have preferred to be in the city and who dare to remain with us, I desire not so much to punish (them) as to win (them) over to (the side of) the state.

3. And[1] I do not[1] know why this cannot be done if they are willing to listen to[2] me and forget the designs of Catiline.

4. Of these men, some are in great debt and yet seem to hesitate to do that which they ought to have done before this.

5. It is indeed very foolish for these men to remain in debt, but they cannot be persuaded to free themselves.

6. There are others who desire to get control of affairs, but who despair of being able to accomplish this when the state is undisturbed.[3]

7. It is necessary for these men to understand these (facts; namely,) that I am looking out for (the interests of) the state, and that we have large forces of soldiers.

8. The third class is (composed) of the soldiers of Sulla, and these men must be ordered to cease plotting against the state.

9. Others are so deeply in debt[4] that they may remain with Catiline without danger to the state.

---

[1] neque. Cf. 394.

[2] "listen to" = "hear."

[3] Cf. 370.

[4] "so deeply in debt" = "in so great debt."

10. The fifth class is (composed) of all (sorts of) criminals, — (men) who from their youth[1] (up) have learned to murder and commit all (sorts of) crimes.

11. From these facts, fellow-citizens, you may understand what these men are attempting to accomplish and what you ought to do.

12. (It is) against these forces (that) we must wage war, and (it is) against these men (that) we have determined to lead forth the flower and strength of Italy.

13. Therefore we ought not to fear, for even if the efforts of men should fail, the immortal gods themselves would force these scoundrels to be conquered.

14. It is my (duty) to crush this conspiracy, and I have determined to show you what it is your (duty) to do.

15. The immortal gods used to defend this city from its enemies, and you ought now to implore them to preserve it.

480. CONNECTED PROSE:

When Catiline had been driven forth from the city, his associates in crime attempted to carry out his designs and prepared to join their forces with the army of Catiline. Cicero knew this and tried to check the attempts of these wicked men. It was the duty of the consul to announce to the people what had happened, and therefore Cicero in the second oration against Catiline showed what the followers of Catiline[2] were attempting to accomplish and what they[3] ought to do.

---

[1] "from boys." [2] ille. [3] ipse.

481. EXERCISE FOR ORAL TRANSLATION

1. You may do this. You ought to do this. You must do this.

2. You might have done this. You ought to have done this. You had to do this.

3. It is dangerous to attempt to do this.

4. It is the duty of the consul to defend the state.

5. I order you to depart. *Translate twice, using* **iubeō** *and* **imperō**.

6. He could not have prevented them from doing this. *Translate three times, using* **prohibeō, impediō, dēterreō**.

7. Catiline sent two Roman knights to kill Cicero. *Give in four ways.*

8. I dare not try to crush this conspiracy.

9. They begin to say. They began to say. It began to be said.

10. I desire to be lenient. I desire him to be lenient. I begged him to be lenient.

LESSON XV

THE INFINITIVE (*Concluded*)—INDIRECT DISCOURSE

482. REFERENCES:

1. Infinitive in Indirect Discourse: 333–336.
2. Tenses of the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse: 337–343.
3. Personal and Impersonal Constructions: 344–345.
4. Indirect Discourse — Complex Sentences: 346–350, 250.

483. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

1. In the third oration which was delivered before the people, Cicero said that the city which Catiline had wished to destroy had at last been saved.

2. "There is no one," he said, "that will not say that I who have saved this city ought to be (held) in honor by[1] all good citizens."

3. You ought all to rejoice that this city which has often been threatened with[2] destruction has escaped.

4. I promise to set forth to you all those things which have been done regarding the conspirators.

5. After I saw that Catiline had left with us those who were sharers in his madness, I hoped to discover their plans.

6. I knew that certain envoys of the Allobroges had been bribed, that they had letters from the conspirators to Catiline, and that in a short time they would start from the city.

7. In the letters which were said to have been given to the Allobroges for Catiline there were proofs of the conspirators' crimes.

8. And so I hoped that I could arrest the Allobroges when they should have set out from the city, and that I could get possession of the letters which they were carrying.

9. Pomptinus and Flaccus promised to undertake the task of arresting the envoys and capturing the letters, and this morning they reported that they[3] were waiting for me.

10. Many leading men said that I ought to open the letters before calling[4] the senate together; nevertheless I said that I would not do that.

---

[1] "among."

[2] "threatened with" = "called to."

[3] Cf. 33.

[4] "before I should have called."

11. You know that the senate was called, that the testimony of the Gauls was heard, and that the letters which were captured were read.

12. Volturcius and the Gauls were greatly disturbed, but after we had promised that they would not be punished, they spoke freely.

13. They said that they had letters and instructions from the conspirators to Catiline, and that Catiline had been instructed[1] to come to the city with his army as soon as possible.

14. They said also that the conspirators had urged them to join the conspirators, and even[2] to send as many horsemen as possible against the city.

15. Lentulus is said to have been the chief of the conspirators, for he said that the power over the city[3] would come to a certain Cornelius, and that he was that Cornelius.

484. CONNECTED PROSE:

Cicero said that when the evidence had been given, the conspirators, all of whom were present, looked at each other[4] as if they were accusing each other; and that some who could have denied the crime, confessed. He showed further that thanks had been voted to him and to others; that by the senate's decree Lentulus would be imprisoned when he should have resigned from office; and finally that the same decree had been passed against the other conspirators, who had remained in the city with Lentulus.

---

[1] "it had been ipstructed to Catiline."
[2] Cf. 394.
[3] Cf. 111.
[4] Cf. 26.

485. EXERCISE FOR ORAL TRANSLATION

1. Cicero promised to save the city.

2. Cicero promises to save the city.

3. The citizens see that the city has been stripped of its defenders.

4. They see that they and their children have been saved.

5. They knew that Cicero alone had saved the city.

6. Many said that Catiline was not forming a conspiracy.

7. All good citizens rejoiced that Catiline had left the city.

8. Catiline is said to have set out. It was announced that Catiline had set out.

9. He who remains[1] in the city will be safe. *Give this sentence, depending on* (*a*) **Cōnsul dīcit . . .**; (*b*) **Cōnsul dīxit . . .**

10. All men hoped that Catiline would either desist from his attempt or be killed.

LESSON XVI

THE ABLATIVE CASE

486. REFERENCES:

1. Means or Instrument: 127.
2. Agent: 128–130.
3. Manner: 131–132.
4. Accompaniment: 133–134.
5. Cause: 135–137.
6. Accordance: 138–139.
7. Description (Quality): 140–141.
8. Specification (Respect): 142–145.

487. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

1. The city (which had been) founded by Romulus had been saved by Cicero's diligence and the love of the immortal gods for the Romans.

[1] Cf. 212.

2. Cicero said that in his own opinion he was worthy of the highest honors. He announced that the senate had thanked him in the highest[1] terms.

3. "The senate," he said, "has decreed a thanksgiving in my honor,[2] and this I desire you to celebrate with your wives and children."

4. Then he explained in what way all the plans of the conspirators had been discovered and laid open by him.

5. When the Allobroges were leaving the city with instructions for Catiline, they were arrested at my command by certain men whom I had sent with arms.

6. The Allobroges, together with the conspirators, were led to the senate by my command. In accordance with the order of the senate they were given the public pledge.

7. For this reason they spoke freely and said that Catiline was being summoned with this purpose, that he might join with the leaders in the city.

8. The letters of the conspirators were all alike in this: they showed that men of the greatest daring had wished the barbarians to be joined with themselves.

9. For this reason the senate considered the conspirators worthy of imprisonment, and thought that because of their punishment the rest would leave the city.

10. Of all the conspirators, Catiline was the greatest in daring. If he had remained with us, we could not have saved the state with so little disturbance.

11. All these things seem to have been carried on, not

---

[1] amplissimus. [2] "in my name."

by chance, but by the design of the immortal gods, and in accordance with the fates.

12. For when we were terrified by many omens, wise men ordered us to appease the gods, and in this way save the state from destruction.

13. In accordance with their instructions, we decided to set up a statue of Jupiter. This was a task of so great difficulty that the statue was first set up to-day.

14. And so it happened that when you, with great pleasure, were seeing the statue for the first time, the conspirators were being led to prison by my orders.

15. Therefore a thanksgiving was justly decreed by the senate, for a most cruel civil war has been suppressed by me with very little disturbance.

488. CONNECTED PROSE:

In this war this principle was determined on by Catiline; (namely,) that all who were worthy of praise should be killed. You remember with how great loss other civil disturbances were settled. With (even) greater loss would this war have been finished if Catiline had not been driven from the city by your consul.

489. EXERCISE FOR ORAL TRANSLATION

1. The city founded by Romulus has been saved by my diligence.

2. The ambassadors were leaving the city with this plan.

3. They went with letters; they were speaking with him; they will fight with him.

4. Cicero through (the help of) the praetors arrested the Allobroges.

5. He did it with great swiftness, but unjustly.

6. The ambassadors did this at the command of a conspirator named Lentulus.

7. In my opinion they were justly and deservedly punished.

8. Men well disposed [1] to us; ill disposed [1] to us; he did this at his own risk; of his own accord.

9. A man of great daring, in which he surpassed many.

10. This will seem to have been done by chance, not with my consent.

LESSON XVII

ABLATIVE CASE (*Continued*)

490. REFERENCES:

1. Place Where: 186.
2. Place Whence: 188.
3. Separation: 146–149.
4. Verbs of Want, etc.: 153–154.
5. Time When: 167.
6. Origin: 150–151.
7. Material: 152.
8. Comparison: 157–162.
9. Measure of Difference: 160–162.
10. Price: 163.
11. **Ūtor**, etc.: 165–166.
12. **Opus** and **Ūsus est**: 155–156.

491. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

1. At last, senators, the city is free from danger and plots, and we have all been freed from the fear of death.

2. Catiline, despoiled of his arms of boldness, has been driven forth from the city, and his followers have desisted from their evil plans.

3. Several of the leaders of this conspiracy are now in prison and are awaiting the punishment worthy of their crimes.

4. When Catiline departed from the city he left here

[1] "of good (evil) intent."

a large band formed from all (sorts of) criminals and placed Lentulus and Cethegus in charge of them.

5. It now remains for you to inflict punishment on these men and free us all from the fear of conspiracy.

6. You have already thanked me in extraordinary terms and have passed a resolution[1] (stating) that by my noble conduct, (by) my efforts and foresight, the state has been freed from danger.

7. You have also forced Lentulus to resign from office and have decreed a thanksgiving in my honor.[2]

8. And not without reason have you done this, for this conspiracy has been spread[3] more widely than people think.

9. Silanus is of the opinion[4] that those who attempted to deprive us all of life ought not themselves to enjoy life.

10. There is indeed need of severity against Lentulus and the rest, for if the followers of Catiline lack leaders, the conspiracy can easily be crushed.

11. But if, on the other hand,[5] we show[6] leniency toward these leaders, we shall not perform our duty, and these men will get control of affairs.

12. The longer we delay, the greater will be the danger and the greater will be the number of men with whom we must contend.

13. The motion of Silanus seems to be a little more

---

[1] "passed a resolution" = "decreed."
[2] "in my honor" = "in my name."
[3] "spread" = **dissēminō, -āre.**
[4] "be of an opinion" = **cēnseō** or **intellegō.**
[5] "on the other hand" = **autem.**
[6] "show" = "use."

severe than (that of) Caesar, but I shall show you that it is by far the more lenient.

14. No one is more mild than I, and in this case I am actuated[1] not by cruelty of purpose, but by kindness.

15. Surely if we show leniency toward these men, we shall harm ourselves and the city; but if we punish them with death, we shall seem to show kindness toward ourselves.

492. CONNECTED PROSE:

At last, conscript fathers, we have driven from the city those men who were so ill disposed toward the state. You now see the city freed from plots, the state freed from danger, and yourselves rescued from the midst of death. Lentulus has resigned from office and together with the rest of the conspirators will be punished[2] with a punishment worthy of his evil designs.

493. EXERCISE FOR ORAL TRANSLATION

1. Catiline has for a long time been abusing our patience.

2. You easily found men to free you from that care.

3. Unless these men desist from their crimes, they must be deprived of life.

4. All your plans are clearer to us than daylight.

5. That night a little before daybreak they came to me.

6. The Romans were braver than the Gauls. *Translate in two ways.*

7. Caesar's army was braver than (that) of Ariovistus.[3]

---

[1] "actuate" = **moveō**. [2] **afficiō**. [3] Can this be translated in two ways?

8. This road is ten miles longer than that.

9. This road is much longer than that.

10. That scoundrel is unworthy of leniency and deserves death.

LESSON XVIII

CONDITIONS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE — DEPENDENT UNREAL CONDITIONS

494. REFERENCES:

1. Conditions in Indirect Discourse: 351–356.
2. Dependent Unreal Conditions: 357–358.

495. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

1. If this is true, senators, these conspirators ought to be killed. Cicero says that if this is true, these conspirators ought to be killed. Cicero said that if that was true, those conspirators ought to be killed.

2. If you decide to follow the advice of Caesar, you will give me a companion dear to the people. Cicero said that if they, etc. Cicero says that if they, etc.

3. If you should prefer to follow the opinion of Silanus, the latter would seem the more lenient. Cicero says that if they, etc. Cicero said that if they, etc.

4. Cicero says that if they had followed the advice of Caesar, the conspirators would have been sent out of the city. Cicero said that, etc.

5. Cicero asks whether he would have been cruel or kind-hearted if he had killed the conspirators. Cicero asked, etc.

6. Were these men good citizens they would not be trying to kill us all. Cicero says, etc. Cicero said, etc.

7. If these men had been good citizens, they ought not to have been punished by death. Cicero says, etc. Cicero said, etc.

8. I myself think that if the leaders of this conspiracy should be killed, the conspiracy could easily be crushed. I myself thought, etc.

9. I myself think that if the leaders of this conspiracy are killed, the conspiracy will easily be crushed. I myself thought, etc.

10. If the leaders of this conspiracy had been killed, Cicero would have pardoned the rest. I believe that, etc. I believed that, etc.

11. I do not doubt that if the leaders of this conspiracy had been killed, Cicero would have pardoned the rest.

12. Even if I were not consul, I should try to punish these men with death. Cicero says, etc. Cicero said, etc.

13. If these men did these things, they deserve to be killed. I think that, etc. I thought that, etc.

14. If they were good citizens, they would not wish to destroy this city. I say that, etc. I said that, etc.

15. If these men had been good citizens, they would not have wished to destroy their native land. I say that, etc. I said that, etc.

16. *Transform each of the following sentences into indirect discourse:* (*a*) *after* **Cicerō dīcit**; (*b*) *after* **Cicerō dīxit.**

a. **Sī hōc fēcerit, interficiētur.**

b. **Sī hōc fēcisset, interfectus esset.**

c. **Sī hōc faceret, errāret.**

d. **Sī idōneus esset, cōnsul creandus erat.**

LESSON XIX

TEMPORAL CLAUSES: *CUM*-TEMPORAL—*POSTQUAM*, ETC.

496. REFERENCES:

1. **Cum**-Temporal Clauses: 277–282.
2. Clauses with **Postquam**, etc.: 283–284.

497. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

1. When Pompey was in Asia, Catiline formed a conspiracy for the purpose of overthrowing the government.

2. After this first conspiracy had been suppressed, the conspirators attempted to bring it about that two of their own number be elected consuls.

3. When Catiline saw that Cicero had been elected, he thought that he ought no longer to hesitate to carry out his plans by violence.

4. Therefore he decided to secure the consulship on the following year and had planned to kill those who opposed him, when suddenly Cicero exposed all of his plans.

5. Whenever Catiline adopted plans for the killing of the leading men, Cicero (was) informed (and) prevented him from accomplishing what he attempted.

6. "When," said Cicero, "every one knows that these wicked men are trying to get control of the power in this state, Catiline will leave the city."

7. Accordingly, he considered it the consul's (duty) not only to oppose all Catiline's plans, but also to reveal everything to the people and senate.

8. On the eighteenth day after[1] Cicero had revealed

[1] When a definite interval of time is indicated, **postquam** is followed by the pluperfect.

the plans of the conspirators, Catiline was still in the city and even dared to come into the senate.

9. Such audacity aroused Cicero's anger so that after he had revealed what Catiline had done during those eighteen days, he advised him to leave the city.

10. On the same day Catiline departed. His friends therefore said, "As soon as the cruel consul ordered poor Catiline to depart, he obeyed."

11. When Cicero learned that these things were being said, he delivered to the Quirites the second oration against Catiline.

12. After he had replied both to those who accused him of leniency and to those who accused him of cruelty, he spoke as follows:

13. "When you learn what classes of men have formed this conspiracy, you will be ashamed of having accused me of cruelty."

14. The third oration was delivered before the people, after the conspirators who remained in the city had confessed that they were sharers in Catiline's conspiracy.

15. After he had explained how their plans had been discovered, he tried to persuade the people that they had escaped in accordance with the good will of the immortal gods.

498. CONNECTED PROSE:

For after the citizens had been frightened by omens, they consulted men skilled in such affairs, who said that when a statue of Jupiter had been set up, the danger which was threatening the city would be averted. Accordingly, at the very time when the statue was being

set up, the conspirators were being led to prison and the conspiracy was crushed.

499. EXERCISE FOR ORAL TRANSLATION

1. When the soldiers are in camp, they do not obey this centurion.

2. On the day when he was elected consul, his enemies tried to kill him.

3. When the enemy's army arrives, we shall have to stay inside the town.

4. Whenever the tribune of the soldiers heard shouting, he feared his own men.

5. Not only their letters but also the testimony of the Gauls show that they have done this.

6. He had often said that he had not done this, when suddenly he confessed.

7. When we were marching through Gaul, we crossed many rivers.

8. When we had arrived at the river Rhine, we pitched camp.

9. As soon as Catiline saw the danger, he burst forth from the city.

10. After he had finished this war, numerous messages were brought to him.

11. Scarcely had I said this, when he came.

12. When I am doing this. *Use* **cum** *and translate in all tenses.*

13. I saw him when he arrived. *Use* **ubi.** When he had come, we departed. *Use* **cum.**

14. On the fifth day after the general had come, we joined battle.

LESSON XX

TEMPORAL CLAUSES (*Continued*) — PROVISO

500. REFERENCES:

1. **Dum**, *while*: 285–287.
2. **Dum**, *until*: 288.
3. **Priusquam** and **Antequam**: 289.
4. Proviso: 290.

501. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

1. While Cicero was delivering the first oration he said that it was inconsistent with his habits to refer to the senate (a question) concerning the punishment of the conspirators.

2. Nevertheless before doing[1] anything concerning their punishment he called the senators together in order to ask their opinion on this very question.

3. Until Caesar offered a second proposal, all favored the proposal of Silanus, (which was) that the conspirators be punished with death.

4. "The Sempronian Law," said Caesar, "enjoins a magistrate from putting a Roman citizen to death until the people have assembled and decided that death is a just punishment."

5. While Cicero was speaking, he set forth both Caesar's and Silanus's proposals; but before he had finished speaking, he showed that he favored (that) of Silanus.

6. "The Sempronian Law," he said, "was indeed passed regarding Roman citizens, but no one can retain the rights of citizen provided he has not conducted himself as a citizen."

7. These conspirators seem to have been condemned

[1] "Before he should do anything."

by you before you came to this meeting; no one hesitated before Caesar spoke just now.

8. However, after Caesar had finished speaking, a certain senator went from this meeting before he should have to express an opinion regarding the death of Roman citizens.

9. But you who remain will decree death for these men, provided you remember that we must now decide about men much more dangerous than the Gracchi.

10. After the senate had decreed death for Lentulus and his companions, Cicero put them to death at once before Catiline with his army could come to free them.

11. The many enemies whom Cicero had made in his consulship waited until they should be able to inflict on him some severe punishment.

12. Nor did they cease from their attempts and hopes until they had driven him into exile and even destroyed his home.

13. Cicero, while delivering his fourth oration, had said, "I will endure any fortune, provided only by my efforts safety is gained for the Roman people."

14. Before he was sent into exile, he had said that dangers of exile were to be considered of little importance.

15. But as long as he was in exile and could not see and hear what was going on in the city, he used to write sad letters to his friends in Rome.

502. CONNECTED PROSE:

While Cicero was consul he believed that all citizens of all classes except the conspirators themselves held one

and the same opinion concerning the conspiracy. "As long as I shall live," he said, "people will remember that I have saved the state." However, even before he was driven into exile, people seemed to have forgotten this. But his enemies remembered well that he had put Roman citizens to death.

503. EXERCISE FOR ORAL TRANSLATION

1. Your consul will look out for your safety as long as he lives.

2. We can resist him, provided the good (people) hold the same opinion about him; . . . provided they do not favor him.

3. With how great zeal people listened while Cicero spoke!

4. No one departed until he had finished speaking.[1]

5. Only one man left while he was speaking.

6. The rest remained until he should have finished speaking.

7. Cicero had learned all their plans before others knew that there was a conspiracy.

8. Cicero did not arrest the conspirators until Catiline had left Rome.

9. But he arrested the Gauls before they should bring those letters to Catiline.

10. The Nervii will draw up their line of battle before the Romans arrive.

11. They will then conceal themselves in the forest before they can be seen.

---

[1] "made an end of speaking."

LESSON XXI

PARTICIPLES: ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

504. REFERENCES:

1. Tenses: 359–365.
2. As Nouns: 367–368.
3. As Adjectives: 366.
4. In Place of Clauses: 375.
5. Ablative Absolute: 369–374.

505. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

1. The Lex Papia, passed during the consulship of Cotta and Torquatus, provided that all men not enrolled as citizens should be expelled from Rome.

2. In accordance with this law a certain Gratius attempted to expel the poet Archias, who, though born in Antioch, had lived at Rome for many years.

3. Cicero, who had been taught by this Archias, took up his case and defended him in a speech delivered before his own brother, who was conducting the trial.

4. Cicero asked that in speaking in behalf of Archias he be permitted to employ an unusual style of speaking.

5. He said that if this permission was given,[1] he would first prove that those attacking Archias were greatly mistaken, and then speak of the talent of Archias.

6. Archias, though born in Asia, was known to us for several years before he came to Rome in the consulship of Marius and Catulus.

7. He was here welcomed into the house of the Luculli, and was treated with the highest honor by those who desired that their achievements should be praised.

---

[1] "this thing having been permitted."

8. After a long interval had elapsed,[1] he set out with Marcus Lucullus into Sicily, and thence to Heraclea.

9. At Heraclea he received many honors and was enrolled (as a citizen) in accordance with the law of Silvanus and Carbo.

10. Before (this) citizenship had been given (him), he had lived for many years in Rome; but since no part of the people was enrolled during the censorship of Caesar and Crassus, his name is not found on the records.

11. After the case had been thus stated, Cicero began to speak about the enjoyment resulting[2] from the study of literature.

12. "Wise men," he said, "have not always been learned men; but all have taken great pleasure[3] in the writings[4] of poets.

13. Since the founding of the city there have been few poets who could surpass Archias in talent and learning.

14. If, therefore, you expel this man from the city, you will deprive us all of one of the greatest poets who have ever written of our achievements.

15. Not long since I saw Archias when he was speaking extemporaneously. On being encored[5] he spoke on the same subject, but changed the wording.[6]"

506. CONNECTED PROSE:

Caesar, removing the horses of all, addressed his men and began battle. The Romans, easily breaking up[7] the phalanx of the enemy by hurling their javelins, drew

[1] intermittō.
[2] proficīscor.
[3] "have been greatly pleased by."
[4] "books."
[5] "recalled."
[6] "words."
[7] disiciō.

their swords and made an attack on them. The enemy fled to the nearest mountain; but when they reached the mountain and our men were coming (up), the Boii and Tulingi attacked our men. The first and second lines of the Romans then resisted those (whom they had already) beaten, (and) the third line withstood those (who were) coming (against them).

507. EXERCISE FOR ORAL TRANSLATION

1. In my consulship. Under the leadership of Caesar. With the guidance of the immortal gods.

2. Now that this has been done. When this battle had been finished.

3. **Eā rē permissā.** *Translate this in as many ways as you can.*

4. After the bestowal of citizenship. After the burning of the city.

5. Caesar led forth his troops and drew them up in line of battle.

6. If Catiline had been killed, the state would not have been freed from danger. *Translate the protasis in two ways.*

7. Those who had been arrested were led to me.

8. Though there were (but) few defenders, the city could not be captured.

9. He summoned Labienus and put him in charge of the legions.

10. When they had investigated[1] the case, they inflicted punishment on him.

---

[1] cōgnōscō.

LESSON XXII

EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE

508. REFERENCES:

1. Place Where: 186, 189, 191, 194, *a*, 195–197.
2. Place From Which: 188, 192, 194, *c*, 195, 198.
3. Place To Which: 187, 190, 194, *b*, 195, 198.

509. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

1. In the beginning of the oration in defense of Archias, Cicero told what city the poet was born in and in what parts of Greece he was known.

2. Archias was born of high station at Antioch, a populous city of Asia, and in that city he devoted himself to the study of literature.

3. The glory of his genius soon reached Greece and the Greek cities of Italy. Therefore when he came to Rhegium and Tarentum, he was presented with citizenship.

4. In Latium, and here at Rome, men so admired Archias that he was received into the homes of our greatest men.

5. After he had fixed his residence in the city of Rome, he went from Rome into Sicily, and from Sicily to the city of Heraclea, and there was presented with citizenship.

6. When he had returned from Heraclea to Rome, and was dwelling at his own home, he was enrolled as a Roman citizen.

7. Archias was a friend of Marcus Lucullus, and was often with him both at Rome and in many parts of Italy, and even lived at his house.

8. Therefore Lucullus's enemies tried to expel Archias from Rome, just as if he were not a Roman citizen, for they said that he had never been enrolled at Heraclea.

9. When ambassadors from the city of Heraclea stated that Archias had been enrolled in that city, his enemies saw that they could not expel him from his home.

10. In all lands Cicero's speech for Archias is known, because in many parts of it he praised the study of literature.

11. "In all places," said Cicero, "the study of literature delights us, at home and abroad, in the city and in the country."

12. The glory of our armies is known in all parts of the world, because the exploits of our generals on land and sea have been praised by the poets.

13. When Archias was first coming toward Rome, we went to meet him, and received him into our city with great honor.

14. Are you now, jurors, going to expel from his home and the city of Rome this same poet whose (words of) praise of your generals are now read in all parts of Greece and Asia?

15. For Greek verses which he writes are read in all lands, while the Latin language is confined within its own narrow boundaries.

510. CONNECTED PROSE:

Why should we be living amid such great toils and dangers, O jurors, if we did not look into the future[1]

[1] "into the future" = in posterum.

and hope that our deeds would be extolled by the poets? I beg you, then, not to cast from his home my client,[1] Archias, but to honor the name of poet, which among all races has always been held sacred.

511. EXERCISE FOR ORAL TRANSLATION

1. (1) At home; (2) at my own home; (3) on the ground; (4) in the country; (5) at Carthage; (6) in Cures; (7) in Mississippi; (8) in Cincinnati; (9) in Atlanta; (10) in Alabama; (11) in Syracuse; (12) in Italy; (13) in the city.

2. *Express in Latin* to *the same places, except* (3), *mentioned above.*

3. *Express in Latin* from *the same places, except* (3), *mentioned above.*

4. He went from the vicinity of Rome to the vicinity of Brundisium.

5. We have been conquered on land and sea. Let us not go from the city of Corinth. He has stationed soldiers in the city of Corinth.

6. Let us hasten to the town of Vesontio. Our enemies are in the vicinity of Vesontio.

7. He is famous at home and in war.

8. In many parts of the field bodies of the soldiers were seen. In these places there were many wounded soldiers.

9. In all Asia men feared Mithridates.

10. The enemy were fifteen miles distant from our camp.

---

[1] "my client" = hīc.

LESSON XXIII

CAUSAL AND CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

512. REFERENCES:

1. Causal Clauses: 291–297. 2. Concessive Clauses: 314–322.

513. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

1. Cicero defended Archias because (as he said) he[1] had taught him the art of speaking.

2. "For," said Cicero, "Archias, though he is a poet, can teach an orator, because all the arts which have to do with culture are connected with each other."

3. Although this trial was held in a public court, Cicero spoke freely concerning literary pursuits, because this style of speaking was suited to the defense of a poet.

4. First, however, he spoke on the case itself: "Archias was presented with citizenship by many Italian cities because they admired his genius."

5. Afterward, since he had now for many years had a home at Rome, he received Roman citizenship.

6. Archias, though he was a citizen of many other states of Italy, preferred to be called a Heraclean when he was being enrolled before the praetor.

7. Now Gratius, since[2] he knows that the records of Heraclea have been burned, says that Archias was never presented with citizenship by the Heracleans.

8. However much, O Gratius, you may desire to persuade us that Archias is not legally a Roman citizen, you cannot make us believe you.

---

[1] What pronoun? [2] Do not use a conjunction.

9. For even though the records have been burned, ambassadors from that city say that Archias is a Heraclean.

10. Therefore you ought to admit that he is legally a Roman citizen, since you cannot deny that he had a residence at Rome and was enrolled before the praetor.

11. But granted that he were not already a Roman citizen, if you will hear me further, I will make you think he ought to be.

12. As every one knows, the greatest men have at all times honored the poets: (*a*) because by them their exploits are praised; (*b*) because by them their exploits were praised.

13. Alexander, although[1] he was the greatest of all generals, is said to have called Achilles the most fortunate of all men in that his exploits were praised by Homer.

14. How many cities called Homer their (countryman) because he was a great poet! Shall we then drive Archias from the city in spite of the fact that he is legally our (citizen)?

15. Could not Archias have received citizenship through Metellus Pius, especially since he[2] greatly desired his exploits to be written about?

514. CONNECTED PROSE:

This being the case, save Archias, O jurors; for granting that he is only a Greek and not a Roman, it is better to rejoice that you have added a poet, though a foreigner, to the number of citizens than to grieve at having sent into exile unjustly one who is legally a citizen. Now since

---

[1] Do not use a conjunction. [2] What pronoun?

Archias has really done what was demanded by the law of Silvanus and Carbo of those who wish to become Roman citizens, you jurors will surely not drive him from the city, however much his enemies may demand it.

515. EXERCISE FOR ORAL TRANSLATION

1. Since his brother was conducting the trial, he spoke rather freely.

2. Although he left Rome of his own accord, his friends complain that the consul drove him out.

3. Lentulus, though he could have denied all this, nevertheless confessed.

4. He is worthy of great praise because he has saved the state.

5. However much you may beg for this, I will not give it to you.

6. Granted that this is true, yet they will not believe you.

7. Even though the general should order him to remain, he would depart.

8. These men, since they cannot be driven out, will remain at Rome.

9. The senate thanked him because he had saved Rome.

10. Though Antonius had been one of the conspirators, he was praised along with Cicero.

11. Even if he lives in Rome, he is not a citizen. *Transform this into each of the six types of conditions and translate each.*

12. Although he is calling me, I will not go. *Translate, using:* **cum**; **quamquam**; **licet**; **quamvīs**; **etsī**; **ut.**

LESSON XXIV

EXPRESSIONS AND CONSTRUCTIONS OF TIME

516. REFERENCES:

1. Duration (Extent) of Time: 169.
2. Time When and Within Which: 167–168, 170–172.
3. Time Before and After Which: 173–174.
4. Dates: 175–185.

517. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

1. Marcus Tullius Cicero was born January the third, 106 B.C.[1] His friend Pompey was born in the same year, about nine months later, on September thirtieth.

2. In 66 B.C.[2] Cicero was elected praetor, and in that year delivered a speech on the Manilian law in favor of[3] Pompey.

3. In 63 B.C.,[4] three years later, Catiline's conspiracy was brought to light, and within (the space of) thirty days Cicero delivered four orations against Catiline.

4. The first oration was delivered in the senate on the seventh of November. A few days before, on the twenty-first of October, Cicero had warned the senate of this conspiracy.

5. Therefore the day of murder and burning had been postponed from the twenty-seventh of October to the twenty-eighth of October; but on that day they were not able to make a move against the state.

6. During the night, on the seventh of November, Catiline withdrew from the city, and during the whole night hastened toward the camp of Manlius.

---

[1] Express the date from the founding of Rome.

[2] Express in years before the birth of Christ.

[3] prō.

[4] Express by the names of the consuls, C. Antōnius and ——.

7. On the following day, Cicero delivered the second speech against Catiline before the people.

8. In this speech he warned Catiline's followers to depart, and told them that if they hurried, they could overtake him [1] toward evening.

9. The third oration against Catiline was delivered before the people on December third, when Cicero informed the citizens (of) what had been done by the senate.

10. In the fourth oration, delivered in the senate on the fourth of December, Cicero spoke concerning the punishment of the conspirators who had been arrested by the praetors.

11. In the year after the suppression [2] of this conspiracy, Cicero delivered his famous speech in behalf of his friend, Archias, the poet.

12. This man had come to the city of Rome during the consulship of Marius and Catulus, and had lived in the city for several years.

13. Since Archias had lived in Italy for several years, and had been enrolled (as a citizen) many years before in the city of Heraclea, Cicero easily defended him.

14. Four years later Cicero was driven into exile by his enemies, but in the following year he was recalled.

15. Caesar was assassinated March 15, 44 B.C.,[3] and in the following year Cicero was murdered December seventh.

518. CONNECTED PROSE:

In the year 58 B.C., Gaius Julius Caesar was chosen governor of Gaul and Illyricum, and in the first part of that year he set out for Gaul, where he remained eight

[1] Cf. 33. [2] Cf. 368. [3] Express in years before the birth of Christ.

years. During that time he subjugated the tribes of Gaul, crossed the Rhine, and even transported his army into Britain. In 49 B.C., after he had spent eight years in Gaul, he returned into Italy to protect his interest against his enemies.

519. EXERCISE FOR ORAL TRANSLATION

1. On the tenth day. Within ten days. For ten days.

2. At daybreak. A little before daylight. From one P.M. till evening.

3. A little (while) ago. Ten days ago. Ten months after.

4. This man was killed in the Mithridatic war. In the memory of our fathers.

5. From March fourteenth to March twenty-eighth.

6. *Give in Latin the calendar from October first to November first.*

7. This morning between six and seven o'clock. Last night about nine o'clock.

8. On the arrival of Caesar a few days ago. During that summer.

9. On the appointed day. After the burning of the city.

10. During these (past) twenty years. At one time. Once upon a time.

LESSON XXV

520. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

Although Cicero had had much experience in speaking before he delivered the oration for the Manilian law,

nevertheless this was the first speech delivered to the Roman people as a whole. For whatever power he had (because of his ability) in speaking, all this up to this time he had devoted to the trials of private citizens. Those plans of life entered upon in early manhood had kept him busy in this (kind of) effort, which, however, was not without ample reward. For when he desired to be elected praetor, relying on the love of the Roman people, he gained his desire. This must be considered a great tribute to his ability, for his ancestors had not held any magistracy at Rome.

On the day when he delivered this speech, the Roman people assembled in great numbers to hear him. Accordingly Cicero, remembering that (it was) the citizens (who) had bestowed upon him this honor, spoke for the cause of the people.

"It is a very great pleasure for me," he said, "to speak on this subject, for I have to speak of putting Pompey in charge of the war with the king. You ought first to understand what is taking place in Asia. Two kings are making war on our allies, and at this very time Lucullus, our commander, after accomplishing much and leaving much (unaccomplished), is withdrawing from Asia. Under these circumstances we have to decide whether or not we ought to place in command of this great war our greatest general, Gnaeus Pompey."

LESSON XXVI

521. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

That you may the better understand how deeply it concerns the welfare of all that this war be intrusted to a

suitable commander, I shall first speak of the nature of the war.

Mithridates, who killed so many thousands of Roman citizens in one day, has now been reigning almost twenty-three years, just as if he has never done us any harm. During all these years he has not tried to make us forget that crime, but has often harassed us with war. When we were waging war with Sertorius in Spain, Mithridates attacked us on land and sea, so that we, harassed by two enemies at one time, might have to fight for our supremacy. At that time Pompey crushed Sertorius's forces in Spain, but Lucullus triumphed over Mithridates in such a way that he,[1] though defeated, still reigned. And so it has happened that Mithridates has not yet suffered any punishment worthy of his crime, but is now waging so oppressive a war on our provinces that our revenues, our property, and even the glory of our empire, are at stake. If Mithridates were threatening not your revenues, but only the safety of your allies, nevertheless you ought to consult their interests not only for their own sakes, but also for the sake of the dignity of the state.

Surely, then, this war is of such a character that you ought to wage it with the greatest zeal.

LESSON XXVII

522. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

Mithridates is threatening all Asia so that not only Asia but even the cities in all Greece are in fear lest he may make an attack on them. Some one may say that the

[1] Cf. 33.

fears of our allies ought not to concern us; to these men I should like to reply that it is a question not only of the fear of our allies, but of our greatest revenues. For who of you can deny that in the greatness of the tribute which she pays, Asia surpasses all lands? Perhaps you who live in Rome do not know that when a daring king with an army is at hand, men do not till those fields in which they fear that an army will soon encamp, and that merchants and sailors do not set sail when there is danger that they may meet on the sea ships full of hostile soldiers.

And so it happens that the mere fear of an attack often diminishes the gains of those who live in the provinces, and this cannot happen without[1] our revenues being diminished at the same time.

All men of all classes both here at Rome and in Asia, whose interests are at stake, have the same feeling as you, that Pompey, by whose mere approach the king's attacks were checked, ought to be chosen as the general for this war.

LESSON XXVIII

523. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

In that war which Sertorius in Spain and Mithridates in Asia were at one time waging with us, Pompey crushed the forces in Spain. You have heard also how Lucullus destroyed Mithridates's fleet, freed the cities which he (Mithridates) was besieging, captured the cities in which the royal residences were, deprived the king himself of

[1] Cf. 259, *a*.

his ancestral kingdom, and made him flee as a suppliant to other nations. But he did not capture Mithridates himself, and that is why[1] we must again wage war with that same king. For Mithridates, knowing that Roman citizens are now more greedy for booty than desirous of honor and glory, in his flight left a great quantity of gold and silver and beautiful objects for our soldiers to collect. Then that happened which Mithridates had hoped would happen, for the soldiers preferred to collect the gold and silver rather than to pursue the escaping king. After Mithridates had slipped from our hands, he was assisted both by those who feared and hated us and those who pitied him. Soon he was able to return to the kingdom from which he had been driven, and then reinforcements from many nations enabled[2] him to attack and overwhelm our army. At this crisis, Lucullus was recalled to Rome because, according to ancient precedent, he had held command too long, and the army was handed over to Glabrio, though he was unworthy that such important affairs be intrusted to him.

LESSON XXIX

524. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

Since I am now going to speak of the choice of a commander for this war, (it is) about the distinguished ability of a certain general (that) I shall have to speak. I would that we had so many great generals that it would be difficult for you to know which general I am going to speak about. But since Pompey is the only one whom all our enemies fear, since he is not far distant from those

[1] **quā dē causā.** [2] "brought it about that he was able."

regions, and since he is the equal of the generals of ancient times,[1] does any one doubt that he should be put in charge of this war? For he alone possesses in the highest degree all (those qualities) which a great general ought to possess. (While) still a boy he was a soldier in a great war, in his early manhood both a general and a conqueror, and from that time up to the present[2] day every kind of war on land and sea he has engaged in and brought to a finish — a thing which our generals in Asia seem to have been unable to do.

It remains for me to speak of the war which he recently waged against the pirates. You can better understand how great relief he has brought to all of us if you recall in what great danger we were on account of the pirates before Pompey was placed in charge of our army and fleet. Less than a year ago not even our praetors could set sail without being captured, but within these few months so great a change has Pompey brought about that no pirate can now be found on the whole sea.

LESSON XXX

525. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

A great general should possess many exceptional qualities and should be a man of the greatest integrity, honesty, and self-restraint. All these qualities Pompey possesses (in the) highest (degree), (a fact) which can easily be understood if we compare him with all the other generals whom we have ever seen or heard of. For many of our generals, because of their greed, have done more harm to our allies than to the enemy, and have destroyed

[1] "of ancient times" = **vetus**. [2] "the present" = **hīc**.

more cities of our friends than of those against whom they were sent. Pompey, on the other hand, has always acted with the greatest self-restraint and has never permitted his soldiers to do the slightest[1] harm to our allies. Those things which have often called others aside from their duty, Pompey disregarded, and no city of our allies was ever plundered by his army. Now our allies can understand why their ancestors not unwillingly served the Roman people; and daily dispatches are being brought to Rome, (telling) how the people in Asia regard Pompey. You yourselves know that Pompey is a man of the greatest courage, honor, and culture, and that he is feared by the enemy and loved by all our allies. Shall we then, mindful of these things, hesitate to place him in charge of this war in Asia and to intrust the fortunes of our allies to him, especially when we know that he is the only man whom our allies demand?

LESSON XXXI

526. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

No one can doubt that in prestige Pompey excels all other generals of the present day,[2] and we all know that in conducting wars a general's prestige is of very great importance. For it has often happened that men were moved to hate or love, or to despise or fear, a general because of his reputation alone. Last year Pompey was put in charge of the war which we were waging with the pirates, and there is no doubt that if he had not been in Asia at that time, you would have lost that province.

[1] "slightest" = quicquam.

[2] "of the present day" = "of those who now are."

At that time ambassadors were sent to Pompey to say that they wished to surrender all the states of the Cretans to him, and from this, fellow-citizens, you can judge how much weight this man's prestige has among foreign nations.

Now let me say a few (words) about his success, for this quality also should be sought for in a great general. It is needless to recount the various wars which Pompey has successfully waged on land and sea, for his achievements are so numerous that they seem to have been granted to him by the immortal gods. Therefore, since this man possesses all the qualities which should be found in a great general, why do we hesitate to put him in charge of this war? For even if Pompey were not already in Asia and did not have an army (there), still he ought to be chosen as general for this war.

LESSON XXXII

527. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

Quintus Catulus, a very patriotic man, and Quintus Hortensius, (a man) endowed with the greatest ability and talent, are trying to prevent us from putting Pompey in charge of this war in Asia, and in the past their authority has on many occasions[1] had great influence with you. But in this case you ought not to be persuaded by these men, for last year these same men attempted to persuade you not to appoint Pompey for the war which we were waging with the pirates; and if you had followed their advice then, all of our provinces would now be in the

[1] "on many occasions" = "(in) many places."

power of the pirates. These men grant that all that I have said is true; (namely,) that the war is a very great one, that it must be waged with the utmost energy, and that Pompey is the only man fit to be placed in command of the armies of the Roman people. But they say that all (power) ought not to be conferred on one man. Pompey, in defeating[1] the pirates with so great success, has shown that they were mistaken in that statement. Before he was put in charge of that war, we were no match for the pirates and were being deprived by them not only of our provinces, but even of our sea coast and harbors. When Pompey has accomplished so much in the war which he waged against the pirates, can any one doubt that he will be able to conduct the war with the king with as great success?

LESSON XXXIII

528. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

No one of us doubts, Hortensius, that at that time you spoke with good intention; but now that we have seen that, under the Gabinian law, in one year and by one man, we were all saved from the pirates, we cannot be persuaded to follow your advice. Nor can you persuade us that Aulus Gabinius ought not to be sent as Pompey's lieutenant, for he, by whose law we were saved from the pirates, surely ought to be a sharer in the glory of the general who, in accordance with his law, freed us all from danger.

It remains for me to speak of the authority of Quintus Catulus, which I value very highly. He thinks that all

[1] Use a relative clause.

(powers) ought not be conferred on one man. But in this case I believe that he is greatly mistaken, for I think that the greater a man is, the more the state ought to enjoy (the advantage of) his life and ability. Yet Catulus says that we should not do anything contrary to the precedents of our ancestors and advises that no new measures[1] be adopted. But on many occasions the Roman people has conferred supreme power on one man, and even in the case of Gnaeus Pompey many new (measures) have already been adopted. Nor is it necessary to say that on every occasion he has acted with the utmost integrity and self-restraint.

LESSON XXXIV

529. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

In the war which we are now waging we must choose a general who not only possesses military ability, but who can also conduct himself with uprightness and honor. For the generals whom we have sent to defend our allies during the past years have through their greed harmed our allies more than they have protected (them), and in all Asia there is not a single state which has not been plundered by our generals and armies. Therefore unless we can choose a general who can prevent the cities of our allies from being plundered by his own soldiers, he will not be a suitable man to be sent. Shall we then hesitate to confer all (powers) on Gnaeus Pompey, who is the only man to be found who is loved by all the allies and feared by all our enemies?

If it is a question of authorities, we have many men of

[1] "no new measures" = "nothing new."

prominence as the sponsors of this law, and we can oppose the authorities of these men to the arguments of Catulus and Hortensius.

Therefore, Gaius Manilius, I urge you to abide by your motion and not to be deterred by threats of force from demanding that Gnaeus Pompey be put in charge of this war. And whatever talent I possess, I will gladly employ in aiding you and your law. Nor am I influenced to do this through any desire for Pompey's favor; for whatsoever I have said in this case I assure you I have said because I believe that it is to the best interests of the Roman people to send Pompey to this war.

LESSON XXXV

530A EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

([illegible] One of the Roman legions had been [illegible] an ambuscade. The enemy who outnumbered the Romans were fighting with unusual skill and bravery.)

Titurius alarmed by these things and seeing Ambiorix [illegible] his men, sent a messenger to [illegible] his soldiers. He [illegible] with him, [illegible] prevail upon the [illegible] himself (Titurius) [illegible] his word. [illegible] he had [illegible] rank, to follow [illegible] Ambiorix, on being [illegible] the command [illegible] Meanwhile, while [illegible] Titurius

and the centurions and tribunes were surrounded and killed. Then the Gauls, as was their custom, shouted victory and making a sharp attack on our men threw the ranks into confusion. When Cotta and a large part of the soldiers had fallen, the rest retreated to the camp from which they had gone forth. With difficulty did they sustain the attack until night. On that night, despairing of safety, they all killed themselves. A few who had escaped from the battle before Titurius had been killed, went through the forests to the winter quarters of Labienus and informed him of what had happened.

Ambiorix, elated by this victory, set out with his cavalry to (the territory of) the Nervii and his other neighbors to persuade them not to neglect this opportunity of freeing themselves forever and of taking vengeance on the Romans for all the injuries which they had received. The Nervii were easily persuaded to adopt this plan, and so it happened that since one legion had been destroyed, within a few days the winter quarters of the other legions were attacked by the Gauls.

LESSON XXXVI

531. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

In many parts of Gaul there was a rumor that Caesar could not come to the army on account of the disturbances in Rome. The Gauls, who had for some time been deploring (the fact) that they had been subjected to the sway of the Roman people, were influenced by this rumor to come together to a conference and adopt plans for war. They decided to prepare for war so quickly as to shut

Caesar off from his army. For they believed that the legions would not dare to leave their winter quarters in the absence of their commander, and that Caesar could not reach his legions without a very strong guard. Finally they said that it was better to be killed in battle than not to get back their former liberty, which they had received from their ancestors.

When Caesar was informed of this, he at once set out for Gaul; but when he had arrived there, he was in great doubt (as to) whether[1] he should summon his legions to him or himself go to his legions. Meanwhile the leaders of the conspiracy had persuaded new states to join them. On receipt of this news, Caesar decided that it was of the greatest importance that he should come to his legions. Accordingly, he set out at once with a small force, and by forced marches arrived among the Arverni, whom he easily crushed, since they had thought that no one could cross the mountains and reach them at that time of year. The Arverni at once sent messengers to the Gallic leader, Vercingetorix, to ask him that he should not permit their lands to be laid waste by so small a band of Romans. Vercingetorix decided to come with all his forces to help the Arverni, while Caesar hastened to lead from winter quarters all his legions and to collect them into one place. And so, though the winter was not yet completed, both the forces of the Gauls and the legions of the Romans were being assembled for the great war which was to-be-waged the next summer.

---

[1] Affirmative verbs and expressions of doubt may be followed by an indirect question introduced by **an**.

LESSON XXXVII

532. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

Put the following into indirect discourse after **Ambiorix ad hunc modum locūtus est:**

I confess that I owe much to Caesar in return for his kindness to me, because (it was) by his help (that) I was freed from the taxes which I had been in the habit of paying to my neighbors, and because both my son and my brother's son, whom the Aduatuci kept with them in slavery, have been returned to me by Caesar. That which I did concerning the storming of the Roman camp I did, not according to my own judgment and desire, but at the command of the state. My power is such that the people have no less control over me than I have over the people. So far as the state is concerned,[1] the cause of the war is that they could not hold-out-against a sudden conspiracy. I am not so ignorant as to think that the Roman people can be subdued by my forces, but all Gaul has a fixed plan (of action); this day has been set for attacking all Caesar's winter quarters, so that no legion may be able to come as reinforcement to another legion. Gauls cannot easily refuse Gauls,[2] especially when a plan regarding the liberty of all seems to have been adopted. Since by attacking the Roman camp I have done my duty for the Gauls, I now remember Caesar's kindness. And so I warn the Roman legatus to look out for his own safety and that of his legion; to lead his troops out of winter quarters and to take them either to Cicero or Labienus, one of whom is

[1] "so far . . . concerned," express by using the dative of **cīvitās**. Cf. 87.

[2] Cf. 78.

about fifty miles away, the other a little farther. I promise to grant a safe journey through my territory. In that I am giving the Romans this warning I am both looking out for my own state and returning thanks to Caesar and the Romans for their services.

LESSON XXXVIII

533. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

(EXPLANATION: The army of Caesar, commanded by Curio, and the army of Pompey, commanded by Attius, were drawn up on opposite sides of a valley. On the previous day Curio had addressed his soldiers and had rebuked them for the spirit of fear and mutiny which he had observed among them. They had been greatly moved by his words, and had promised to obey without question whenever he might order them to fight.)

Between the two lines, as I have said above, was a valley, not so (very) large, but the ascent (from it) was very difficult.[1] Each leader waited (to see) whether[2] the forces of the enemy would try to cross it, in order that he might begin battle in a more favorable position. Soon all the cavalry of Attius on the left wing, and along with them many light-armed soldiers, were observed descending into the valley. Against these Curio sent his cavalry and two cohorts of infantry. The cavalry of the enemy did not hold-out-against the first attack of these troops, but fled back to their comrades with their horses at full speed, (and) the light-armed soldiers, abandoned by those who had run forward with them,[3] were surrounded and killed by Curio's forces. The whole line of Attius, looking

[1] "but . . . difficult," express by using an ablative of description.
[2] Cf. page 294, footnote. [3] Express by the adverb **ūnā**.

back, saw their men fleeing and being killed. Then a certain legatus of Caesar whom Curio had taken with him from Sicily, because he knew that he had much experience in war, said, "You observe that the enemy is thoroughly frightened, Curio; why do you hesitate to use your opportunity?"

Curio,[1] after urging the soldiers to remember what they had promised him on the preceding day, ordered them to follow him, and ran forward before all. The sides of the valley were so steep that in the ascent the first could not go forward except when assisted by their comrades. But the soldiers of Attius, terrified by the flight and slaughter of their comrades, did not think about resisting, and all believed that they were being surrounded by the cavalry. And so, before a weapon could be hurled or our soldiers could come nearer, all Attius's line turned and retreated to camp.

LESSON XXXIX

534. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

(EXPLANATION: Murena, the consul elect, is being tried for having employed bribery at the elections when he was chosen consul. During the trial he is also charged with having devoted himself to pleasure instead of duty when in charge of the war with Mithridates. Cicero replies to this charge.)

Cato says that my client, Murena, devoted himself to pleasure and luxury while he was in command of our army in Asia. I should like to say that a general cannot devote himself to pleasure without being defeated, unless

[1] Express by a pronoun.

the enemy is (such as) to be despised. We all know that Murena was not defeated. It remains for us to consider whether Mithridates was an enemy to be despised. This I assert: If this war, if this enemy, if that king, had been (such as) to be despised, the senate and the Roman people would not have thought that the war ought to be undertaken, nor would Lucullus have waged it for so many years with so much glory, nor would the Roman people with such zeal have intrusted the task of finishing it to Pompey.

Of all Pompey's battles that which he fought with the king seems to have been the most severe. When he[1] had escaped from this battle and fled to the Bosporus, where our army could not go, even in this extremity he still retained the name of king. And so when Pompey had seized the kingdom and expelled the enemy from all his well-known dwelling places, and because of his victory was in possession of everything, yet he did not consider the war finished until he had deprived him[1] of life. Do you, then, jurors, despise this enemy whom so many generals have waged war with for so many years — (an enemy) whose life, (even) when he was defeated and exiled, was considered of such moment that[2] only upon the announcement of his death was the war considered finished?

Can any one, then, believe that Murena, who waged war with so great an enemy without being defeated, was at the same time devoting himself to pleasure rather than duty?

---

[1] Mithridates.

[2] "that, his death having been announced, the war was finally considered finished."

LESSON XL

535. EXERCISE FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

(EXPLANATION: Murena, one of the consuls elected to succeed Cicero, was accused of having secured his election by bribery. If convicted, he could not enter on the duties of consulship on January first.[1] Cicero, who was consul at the time of the trial, defended Murena. During his speech he made the point that it would be unwise to exclude from the consulship a general of so much experience as Murena, when a great conspiracy was on foot.[2])

In this crisis of the state it is of the greatest importance that there should be two consuls on the first of January. Two have been elected, but you, who are accusing my client, are trying to deprive the state of one of them. Do you not see, Cato, that this is the very thing that Catiline and the conspirators desire? Do you not see the danger? All the evils which have been stirred up throughout these three years, from that time when the plan of killing the senate was adopted by Catiline, are bursting forth in[3] these days (and) in this time. What place is there, jurors, what time, what day, what night, when I am not being rescued from the swords of these men, not by my foresight, but by the wisdom of the gods? Those conspirators do not desire to kill me on my own account, but to remove a diligent consul from his guardianship of the state. Not less, Cato, would they like to make way with you, a diligent tribune, if they could — a thing

[1] On January first the newly elected consuls were inaugurated.

[2] This speech was delivered in December of the year of Cicero's consulship, before the fear aroused by Catiline's conspiracy had subsided.

[3] "into."

which they are now plotting and setting about. They see how much protection to the state there is in you. They believe that if you are deprived of the aid of the consul, they will then more easily crush you when thus unarmed and weakened. For they do not fear that, if Murena is expelled from the consulship, any one will be chosen in his place. They hope that Silanus[1] without a colleague, and you without a consul, and the republic without protection, can be destroyed.

In the midst of perils so great as these[2] it is your duty, Cato, since you were not born for yourself but for your country, to observe what is going on, to keep as a defender, as an ally in the republic, my client, Murena, a consul experienced in military affairs, a consul who can defend us from the attacks of these conspirators.

---

[1] Silanus, along with Murena, was one of the consuls elect.

[2] "so great as these" = "these so great."

SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

PART III

LESSON I

Learn carefully the word list in 3.

addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead on, induce, influence.*

auctōritās, -tātis, f., *influence, prestige.*

causa, -ae, f., *cause, case;* **causam dīcō**, *plead a cause, plead a case.*

cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum, *collect, gather; force, compel.*

commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *move, alarm, disturb.*

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f., *conspiracy;* **coniūrātiōnem faciō**, *form a conspiracy.*

cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum, *establish, determine, appoint, fix.*

contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *hold in, hem in, bound.*

ēripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum, *snatch away, rescue.*

fidēs, fideī, f., *promise, pledge, faith;* **fidēs et iūs iūrandum**, *oath-bound pledge.*

fīnis, fīnis, m., *end, boundary;* **fīnēs**, fīnium, m. pl., *territory, country.*

incolō, -ere, -coluī, —, *inhabit, live, dwell* (*in*), with acc.

inter nōs damus, inter vōs datis, etc., *we* (*you*, etc.) *interchange, exchange.*

iūdicium, iūdicī, n., *trial, judgment.*

mulier, mulieris, f., *woman.*

parātus, -a, -um (p. p. of **parō**), *prepared, ready;* **parātus ad . . .**, *ready for . . .*

pars, partis, f., *part, direction.*

rēgnum, -ī, n., *kingdom, royal power, throne.*

vehementer (adv.), *greatly, strongly, exceedingly, very, severely.*

vinculum, -ī, n., *bond, chain;* **ex vinculīs**, *in chains.*

LESSON II

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, *drive; do, act; treat, discuss.*

castra, -ōrum, n. pl., *camp;* **castra pōnō**, *pitch camp;* **castra moveō**, *break camp.*

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *try, attempt.*

cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum, *become accustomed;* in the perfect system, *be accustomed, be used.* Cf. 209–210.

interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *block, cut off, shut off.*

ita (adv.), *thus, so; as follows.*

iter, itineris, n., *way, road, route, passage.*

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *remain, stay, abide.*

memoria, -ae, f., *memory;* **memoriā teneō**, *remember.* (**memoriā**, abl. of means.)

mūnītiō, -ōnis, f., *fortification.*

perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *arrive;* . . . **ad** . . ., *reach.*

posterus, -a, -um, *following.*

prīmus, -a, -um, adj., *first;* **prīmō**, adv., *first;* **prīmum**, adv., *at first, in the first place.*

prīstinus, -a, -um, *former, of olden time.*

prohibeō, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitum, *prevent, keep off, keep out.*

satisfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, *make amends, render satisfaction.*

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *devastate, lay waste, ravage.*

LESSON III

Learn carefully the lists of words in 70, 72.

apertus, -a, -um, *open.*

campus, -ī, m., *plain, level ground.*

cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *conceal, hide.* Cf. 70.

certus, -a, -um, *determined, fixed, certain;* **certiōrem faciō**, *inform;* **certior fīō**, *be informed.*

circumdō, -are, -dedī, -datum, *surround, place around.*

circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *surround, gather around.* Cf. 62.

explōrātor, -tōris, m., *scout.*

īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -structum, *draw up, array, build.*

mīlle (indecl. adj.), *a thousand;* **mīlia**, mīlium, n. pl., *thousands.*

moneō, -ēre, monuī, monitum, *warn, advise.*

passus, -ūs, m., *a pace;* **mīlle passūs**, *a* (Roman) *mile;* **mīlia passuum**, (Roman) *miles.*

polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum, *promise.*

potēns, potentis, *powerful.*

plūs possum (**valeō**), *be more powerful.* Study carefully 66.

quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, *ask* (for), *seek.* Cf. 70–72.

respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, *answer, reply.*

retineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *hold back, keep, retain.*

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *ask* (for) *beg.* Cf. 70–72.

sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum, *know, think, entertain an opinion.*

sub (prep.) with acc., *to the foot of;* with abl., *at the foot of.*

summus, -a, -um, *highest, top of.* Cf. 108.

tandem (adv.), *finally, at last.*

LESSON IV

Learn carefully the list of words in 221.

centūriō, -ōnis, m., *centurion.*

concilium, concilī, n., *meeting, council.*

cornū, -ūs, n., *horn, wing* (of an army); **ā dextrō cornū**, *on the right wing;* **ā sinistrō cornū**, *on the left wing.*

crūdēlitās, -tātis, f., *cruelty.*

dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *choose, select.*

dolus, -ī, m., *trickery, strategy, cunning.*

fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsum, *deceive, trick.*

genus, generis, n., *race, nation, tribe.*

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *command, rule.* Cf. 79–82.

loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *speak, talk, say.*

nūntius, nūntī, m., *messenger, message, report.*

officium, officī, n., *duty, sense of duty, loyalty.*

patior, patī, passus sum, *permit, allow, suffer, endure.*

praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *direct, instruct, order.*

proelium, proelī, n., *battle;* **proelium committō**, *begin battle, join battle.*

quotiēns, *how many times? how often?*

redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *renew.*

redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead back.*

quō modō, *how?* Used especially to modify verbs.

quam, *how?* Used especially to modify adjectives and adverbs.

LESSON V

Learn carefully the list of words in 263.

ācer, ācris, ācre, *fierce, sharp, eager, keen.*

arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, *summon, send for.*

barbarus, -a, -um, *barbarous.*

colloquium, colloquī, n., *conference.*

commeātus, -ūs, m., *supplies.* Commonly used in the singular.

cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *overtake.*

crūdēlis, -e, *cruel.*

effugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitum, *escape, flee.*

fīnitimus, -a, -um, *neighboring, next;* **fīnitimī**, -ōrum, m. pl., *neighbors.*

īnferō, -ferre, intulī, inlātum (illātum), *inflict, bring upon.*

obiciō, -ere, -iēci, -iectum, *expose.*

reddō, -ere, reddidī, redditum, *return, give back.*

redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *return, go back.*

revertor, revertī, revertī *or* reversus sum, reversum, *return, go back, come back.*

reiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *hurl back, throw back.*

statim (adv.), *at once, immediately, straightway.*

sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *withstand, sustain.*

tūtus, -a, -um, *safe;* **tūtō**, adv., *safely.*

vigilia, -ae, f., *watch.* Cf. 175.

LESSON VI

Learn carefully the list of words in 81.

appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *approach, draw near.*

comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *prepare, raise* (an army).

complūrēs, complūra (complūria), *several.*

imperium, imperī, n., *control, command, rule.*

inquam, *I say;* **inquit**, *he says;* **inquiunt**, *they say.* Cf. 412, 3.

lūx, lūcis, f., *daylight;* **prīmā lūce**, *at daybreak.*

māgnopere (adv.), *greatly, much, very.*

novae rēs, novārum rērum, f. pl., **nova imperia**, novōrum imperiōrum, n. pl., *a revolution, a change of government.*

oppūgnātiō, -ōnis, f., *siege, attack.*

perterreō, -ēre, -terruī, -territum, *alarm, disturb.*

petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, *seek, sue for, ask for.*

profectiō, -ōnis, f., *departure, a setting out.*

tumultus, -ūs, m., *disorder, disturbance.*

ūsus, -ūs, m., *use, advantage.*

ūtilis, -e, *useful, advantageous.*

LESSON VII

Learn carefully the lists of words in 275, 1–4.

coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, *join.*

cōnspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum, *see, catch sight of.*

cotīdiē (adv.), *each day, daily.*

dīgnus, -a, -um, *worthy.* Cf. 145, 275.

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *hesitate; doubt.* Cf. 272–273.

fuga, -ae, f., *flight, escape;* **in fugam dō**, *put to flight.*

idōneus, -a, -um, *suitable, fit.* Cf. 92, 275.

impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *prevent, hinder.* Cf. 269–270.

dēterreō, -ēre, -terruī, -territum, *prevent, deter.* Cf. 269–270.

prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *prevent.* Cf. 271.

metuō, -ere, metuī, —, *fear, be afraid.* Cf. 266–268.

timeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *fear, be afraid.* Cf. 266–268.

vereor, -ērī, veritus sum, *fear, be afraid.* Cf. 266–268.

metus, -ūs, m., *fear.*

timor, -ōris, m., *fear.*

mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *fortify.*

nē . . . quidem with the emphatic word between, *not even.*

prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum, *advance, proceed.*

recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *refuse.* Cf. 269–270.

repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum, *drive back.*

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow, pursue.*

LESSON VIII

Learn carefully the list of words in 382.

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *build.*

collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *station, place.*

cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *accomplish, finish.*

cōnfectus, -a, -um, *exhausted, worn out.*

cōnsilium, cōnsilī, n., *plan;* **cōnsilium capiō**, *adopt a plan.*

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *care for, arrange, attend to.* Cf. 382.

dēdō, -ere, dēdidī, dēditum, *give up, surrender.* The object must be expressed.

discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *withdraw, depart.*

facultās, -tātis, f., *chance, opportunity.*
intrā (prep. with acc.), *inside, within.*
nāvālis, -e, *naval.*
nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *navigate, sail.*
offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum, *offer.*
opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum, *crush.*
palūs, palūdis, f., *marsh, swamp.*
prope (adv. and prep. with acc.), *near, nearly, almost.*
prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, *look after, look out for.* Cf. 382.
recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *take back, recover;* **mē recipiō**, *I retreat, retire.*
relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum, *leave, abandon.*
rēs frūmentāria, reī frūmentāriae, f., *grain supply.*

LESSON IX

Learn the list of words in 109.

aliēnus -a, -um, *of another, of others, another's, others'.* Cf. 98.
āmentia, -ae, f., *madness.*
armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *arm;* **armātus**, -a, -um, *armed.*
circiter (adv.), *about.*
cōnsuētūdō, -dinis, f., **mōs**, mōris, m., } *custom.*
cotīdiānus, -a, -um, *daily.*
dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsum, *defend, protect.*
tueor, tuērī, (tūtus sum), *defend, protect, watch, guard.*
dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *destroy.*
exercitātiō, -ōnis, f., *training, practice, experience.*
īnferō, -ferre, intulī, inlātum (illātum), *bring in, import.*
importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *bring in, import.*
iterum (adv.), *again, a second time.*
rūrsus (adv.), *again, back again.*
lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, *harass, attack.*
longē (adv.), *by far, far.*
negōtium, negōtī, n., *business, task, undertaking.*
quotannīs (adv.), *yearly, every year.*

LESSON X

Learn carefully the lists of words in 117, 118, 122.

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *accuse, blame, charge.* Cf. 121.
admoneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *warn, remind.* Cf. 117.
causa, -ae, f., *cause, case, reason.*
damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *condemn.* Cf. 121.
dēditiō, -ōnis, f., *surrender.*
ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, *go forth;* **(nāvī) ēgredior**, *disembark.*
exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *consider, think.*
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum, *lead; consider.*
factum, -ī, n., *act, deed.*
interest, interesse, interfuit, *it is to the interest (advantage) of.* Cf. 124–125.
lītus, lītoris, n., *shore.*
meminī, *remember.* Cf. 116 and 209.

miseret, miserēre, miseruit, *it pities*. Cf. 118.

mox (adv.), **brevī tempore**, } *soon.*

oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum, *forget*. Cf. 116.

paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit, *it repents, it regrets*. Cf. 118.

portus, -ūs, m., *harbor*.

pudet, pudēre, puduit, *it shames*. Cf. 118.

recordor, -ārī, -ātum, *recall*. Cf. 116.

remittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send back, return*.

LESSON XI

audācia, -ae, f., *daring, audacity*.

cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *plan, plot*. With acc., or **dē** + abl.

coniūrātus, -ī, m., *conspirator*.

cōnsilium, cōnsilī, n., *plan, deliberations*.

dētrīmentum, -ī, n., *harm, loss*.

dīvidō, -ēre, -vīsī, -vīsum, *divide, separate*.

ēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send forth, let go*.

exitium, -ī, n., *destruction*.

exsilium, exsilī, n., *exile*.

famēs, -is, f., *hunger*.

grātia, -ae, f., *gratitude, good will, influence;* **grātiam habeō**, *be thankful;* **grātiās agō**, *thank, render thanks;* **grātiam referō**, *requite*.

impendeō, -ēre, —, —, *hang over, threaten*.

inopia, -ae, f., *want, need*.

invidia, -ae, f., *envy, hatred, unpopularity*.

miser, misera, miserum, *unfortunate, wretched, poor*.

molior, -īrī, -ītus sum, *plan, plot, contrive*.

ostentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *show, display*.

particeps, participis, *participant, sharer*. Cf. 113, 114.

perniciēs, -ēī, f., *destruction*.

LESSON XII

acsī, **velutsī**, **tamquamsī**, } *as if*. Cf. 313.

adhūc (adv.), *hitherto, up to this time, still*.

alloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum, *address, speak to*.

cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *strengthen, affirm, assure, assert*.

exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, **discēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, **ēgredior**, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, } *forth, go out, leave.* With **ex** + abl.

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum, *carry on;* **mē gerō**, *act, conduct — self, behave*.

improbus, -a, -um, *wicked, base*.

incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsum, *set fire to, burn*.

inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *find, discover*.

potius (adv.), *rather, preferably*.

prūdentia, -ae, f., *foresight, wisdom*.

sevēritās, -tātis, f., *severity*.

socius, -ī, m., *associate, comrade, ally, follower, accomplice*.

supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *be left, survive*.

suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *undertake, incur.*
testis, -is, m., *witness.*
tot (indecl. adj.), *so many.*
tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, *remove, make way with.*
vix (adv.), *scarcely, barely, with difficulty.*

LESSON XIII

abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *cast aside, give up.*
caedēs, -is, f., *slaughter, murder, death.*
comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *gather, prepare.*
cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *gather together;* **mē cōnferō**, *betake — self.*
coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *conspire.*
cōnsilium, cōnsilī, n., *plan, design.*
dēsinō, -ere, -sīvī, -situm, *cease, stop, leave off.*
dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, —, *cease, leave off, desist.*
frūstrā (adv.), *in vain, unsuccessfully.*
genus, generis, n., *class.*
gaudeō, -ēre, **gāvīsus sum**, **laetor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, } *rejoice.*
item (adv.), *likewise.*
mereor, -ērī, -itus sum, *deserve.* Also active, **mereō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *change.*
nisi, *unless, except.* Cf. 299, 2.
nōlī (sing.), **nōlīte** (plur.), *do not, don't.* Imperative of **nōlō**, followed by the infinitive. Cf. 240.
oppōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *oppose.* The object must be expressed.
poena, -ae, f., *punishment, penalty;* **poenās pendō**, *pay the penalty;* **poenās persolvō**, *pay the penalty;* **poenas dō**, *pay the penalty.*
Quīrītēs, -ium, m., pl., *citizens, fellow-citizens.*
ut, *as* (with indic.).
quem ad modum, *as.*
verbum, -ī, n., *word, term.*

LESSON XIV

adsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *accomplish, attain.*
aes, aeris, n., *brass, money;* **aes aliēnum**, *debt.*
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, *dare.*
comprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum, *crush, overwhelm, suppress.*
cōnātus, -ūs, m., *attempt.*
cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, **cōnsequor**, -sequī, -secūtus sum, } *carry out, accomplish.*
dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *fail.*
discō, -ere, didicī, —, *learn.*
flōs, flōris, m., *flower.*
gerō, *carry on;* **geritur**, *go on, happen.*
implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *implore, beg.*
improbus, -ī, m., *scoundrel, wicked man.*
opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum, *check.*
ostendō, -ere, ostendī, ostentum, *show, explain.*
plācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *appease, win over, conciliate.*

quiētus, -a, -um, *quiet, undisturbed.*
rēs, reī, f., *fact.*
rōbur, roboris, n., *strength, power.*
scelerātus, -ī, n., *criminal.*
studium, -ī, n., *zeal, effort.*
ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum, *punish, avenge.*

LESSON XV

Learn carefully the list of words in 336.

abdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, with reflexive, *resign;* **mē abdicō**, *I resign.* Cf. 149.
aperiō, -īre, aperuī, apertum, *open.*
aspiciō, -ere, aspēxī, aspectum, *look at, regard, look upon.*
comperiō, -īre, -perī, -pertum, *find out, discover.*
comprehendō, -ere, -prehendī, -prehēnsum, *arrest.*
cōnfiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum, *confess, acknowledge.*
cūstōdia, -ae, f., *custody;* **in cūstōdiam dō**, *put in prison, imprison.*
dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, *decree, pass a decree.*
ēdō, -ere, ēdidī, ēditum, *give forth.*
indicium, indicī, n., *testimony, evidence.*
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum, *read.*
litterae, -ārum, f. pl., *letter, dispatch.* Cf. **letter** in English-Latin Vocabulary.
magistrātus, -ūs, m., *office, magistracy, magistrate.*
mandātum, -ī, n., *instruction, order.*
multō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *punish;* **morte multō**, *punish with death, inflict the death penalty on.*
ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., *speech;* **ōrātiōnem habeō**, *deliver a speech.*
prīnceps, prīncipis, m., *leading man, prominent man.*
prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *set forth, tell, declare.*

LESSON XVI

animus, -ī, m., *mind, disposition, intention;* **bonō (amīcō) animō**, *well disposed;* **inimīcō animō**, *ill disposed, hostile.*
calamitās, -tātis, f., *loss, disaster.*
cāsus, -ūs, m., *chance, misfortune.*
collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *place, set up, station.*
condō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *found.*
cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *settle.*
dēprehendō, -ere, -prehendī, -prehēnsum, *discover, catch.*
dissēnsiō, -ōnis, f., *disturbance, dissension.*
ergā (prep. with acc. case), *for, toward.*
gaudium, gaudī, n., *pleasure, joy.*
lēx, lēgis, f., *law, principle.*
patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, *lay open, disclose.*
ratiō, -ōnis, f., *way, means, manner, plan, scheme.*
sapiēns, -entis, *wise;* as a noun, m., *a wise man, a philosopher.*
sententia, -ae, f., *opinion, advice, motion.*
suā sponte, *of his own accord,* **meā sponte**, *of my own accord*
supplicātiō, -ōnis, f., *thanksgiving.*
uxor, -ōris, f., *wife.*

LESSON XVII

Learn carefully the lists of words in 148–149; 159, 165.

carcer, carceris, m., *prison.*

careō, -ēre, —, —, *lack, be without, go without.* Cf. 153.

causa, -ae, f., **rēs**, reī, f., } *case.*

cēnseō, -ēre, cēnsuī, cēnsum, *be of the opinion, give one's opinion, decree.*

fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, *enjoy.* Cf. 165.

fungor, fungī, fūnctus sum, *perform.* Cf. 165.

hūmānitās, -tātis, f., *kindness, human feeling, refinement, culture.*

īnsidiae, -ārum, f. pl., *plot, stratagem, treachery, ambuscade.*

lēnis, -e, *lenient, mild, kind-hearted.*

lēnitās, -tātis, f., *leniency, mildness, kind-heartedness.*

līber, lībera, līberum, *free, free from.* Cf. 149.

mītis, -e, *mild, gentle, compassionate.*

nefārius, -a, -um, *wicked, infamous.*

opus (indecl. noun), *need.* Cf. 155.

prīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *deprive.* Cf. 149.

profectō (adv.), *surely, certainly, to be sure.*

sevērus, -a, -um, *severe, harsh, stern.*

singulāris, -e, *extraordinary, unusual.*

spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *despoil, rob.*

supplicium, -ī, n., *punishment;* **supplicium dē aliquō sūmō** (-ere, sūmsī, sūmptum), *inflict punishment on any one.*

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *use, employ, show.* Cf. 165.

vacuus, -a, -um, *free from, unoccupied, destitute of.* Cf. 149.

vehemēns, -entis, *severe, forcible, harsh.*

virtūs, -tūtis, f., *manliness, virtue, courage, noble conduct.*

LESSON XVIII

comes, comitis, m. or f., *companion.*

crūdēlis, -e, *cruel.*

dīgnus, -a, -um, *worthy;* **dīgnus sum quī** + subjunctive, *deserve.* Cf. 145 and 275, 1.

patrēs cōnscriptī, patrum cōnscriptōrum, m. pl., *senators.*

sententia, -ae, f., *advice, opinion.*

LESSON XIX

Learn carefully the list of words in 283.

ad (prep. with acc. case), *to, near, before.*

adferō, -ferre, attulī, adlātum (allātum), *bring to.*

adhūc (adv.), *hitherto, up to this time, still.*

adsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *accomplish, secure.*

āvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum, *avert, ward off, turn aside.*

cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum, *decide.* Cf. 329.

cōnsulātūs, -ūs, m., *consulship, the office of consul.*

crēber, crēbra, crēbrum, *frequent, numerous.*

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *elect, choose.* Cf. 68.

cum (conj.), *when, whenever.* Cf. 277–282.

cum . . . tum, *not only . . . but also, both . . . and.* Cf. 280, note.

ērumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *burst forth.*

īra, -ae, f., *anger, wrath.*

obstō, -stāre, -stitī, —, *oppose, thwart, resist.*

rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f., the public interests, the state, the government.*

simulac or **simulatque**, *as soon as.* Cf. 283.

vīs (vīs), f., *force, violence;* **per vim**, *by force, by violence, forcibly.*

voluntās, -tātis, f., *good will, wish, consent.*

LESSON XX

Learn carefully the lists of words in 285, 288, 290.

abhorreō, -ēre, -uī, —, *shrink from, be at variance with, be inconsistent with.*

caput, capitis, n., *head, death.*

cēnseō, -ēre, cēnsuī, cēnsum, *decree, enjoin.*

cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum, *lay down, pass* (a law).

domicilium, -ī, n., *home, residence.*

dum, *while; as long as; until; provided that.* Cf. 285–288, 290.

familiāris, -e, *friendly, intimate;* as a noun, *a friend, an intimate friend.*

fīnis, -is, m., *end;* **fīnem faciō**, *make an end, finish.*

iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *decide.*

labor, labōris, m., *toil, hardship, effort.*

mōs, mōris, m., *custom, habit.*

ōrdō, ōrdinis, m., *rank, grade, class.*

pariō, -ere, peperī, partum, *procure, acquire, gain.*

praeter (prep. with acc. case.), *except, beside.*

prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *set forth, offer.*

rēs, reī, f., **causa**, -ae, f., } *question.*

sententia, -ae, f., *opinion;* **sententiam ferō**, *express an opinion, vote.*

subeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *endure, undergo, submit to.*

suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *undertake, incur, make* (an enemy).

teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentum, *hold, retain.*

LESSON XXI

accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *take, receive, welcome.*

adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *treat.*

ascrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, ascrīptum, *enroll.*

cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *encourage, address.*

doctrīna, -ae, f., *learning.*

doctus, -a, -um, *learned.*

ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead out, draw* (a sword).

errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *wander, go astray, be mistaken, make a mistake.*

exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *train, practice;* **iūdicium exerceō**, *conduct a trial, preside over a trial.*

frūctus, -ūs, m., *fruit, enjoyment.*

genus, generis, n., *race, kind, class, style.*

ingenium, -ī, n., *talent, genius, inborn quality.*

lēgem ferō, *pass a law.*

litterae, -ārum, f. pl., *letter, letters, literature.*

novus, -a, -um, *new, strange, unusual.*

inūsitātus, -a, -um, *unusual, extraordinary.*

petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, *seek, attack.*

poēta, -ae, m., *poet.*

praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *instruct, teach.*

rēs gestae, rērum gestārum, f. pl., *achievements, exploits.*

sanciō, -īre, sānxi, sānctum, *decree, ordain, provide.*

LESSON XXII

Learn carefully the lists of words in 189, 196, 194.

celeber, -bris, -bre, *crowded, populous; famous.*

cīvitās, -tātis, f., *state, citizenship.*

cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum (collātum), *bring together; devote;* **mē ad aliquid cōnferō**, *I devote myself to something.*

contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, *hold together, hold in, confine, hold in restraint.*

corpus, corporis, n., *body.*

dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *present, give.* Cf. 78, *a.*

exiguus, -a, -um, *narrow, small, meager.*

forīs (adv.), *out of doors, abroad.*

iūdex, iūdicis, m., *judge, juror;* **iūdicēs**, *gentlemen of the jury.*

locus, -ī, m. (n. in pl.), *spot, place, station.*

mīlitiae (loc. of mīlitia), *in war, abroad, in the field* (of war).

nōbilis, -e, *noble, high* (station), *of high station.*

occurrō, -ere, -cucurrī, -cursum, *go to meet, meet.*

orbis, -is, m., *circle;* **orbis terrae** or **orbis terrārum**, *the world, the earth.*

rūs, rūris, n., *country* (as opposed to the city). Cf. 194.

terrā marīque, *on land and sea.*

versus, -ūs, m., *verse.*

vulnus, vulneris, n., *wound.*

LESSON XXIII

Learn the lists of words in 291, 314.

addō, -ere, addidī, additum, *add.*

aliēnus, -a, -um, *of another;* **aliēnus**, -ī, m., *a foreigner.*

aptus, -a, -um, *suited, fit.* Cf. 92–93.

contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, *hold together, connect.*

fortūnātus, -a, -um, *fortunate.*

iniūriā (adv.), *unjustly.* Cf. 132.

iūre (adv.), *justly, legally.* Cf. 132.

pertineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, *concern, pertain, have to do with,* with **ad** and the accusative.

praesertim (adv.), *especially.*

quamvīs (conj.), *however much, although.* Cf. 319.
rem agō, *conduct a trial, conduct a case.*
tabula, -ae, f., *record, document.*
tantum (adv.), *only, merely.*
vērō (adv.), *really, truly.* Cf. 412.
vērum (conj.), *but.*

LESSON XXIV

Learn the lists of words in 176, 177.

ante Chrīstum nātum, *before the birth of Christ,* B.C. Cf. 184.
celerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *hurry, hasten.*
clārus, -a, -um, *famous, renowned.*
commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *move;* **mē commoveō**, *I make a move* (reflexive).
cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum (collātum), *postpone.*
cōnsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, *spend.*
Īdūs, -uum, f. pl., *the Ides.* Cf. 177, 179, 180.
inlūstrō (illūstrō), -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *bring to light, disclose.*
Kalendae, -ārum, f. pl., *the Kalends.* Cf. 177, 179, 180.
mēnsis, -is, m., *month.*
nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, *be born.*
Nōnae, -ārum, f. pl., *the Nones.* Cf. 177.
pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *subjugate.*
praeclārus, -a, -um, *famous, renowned, distinguished, splendid.*
prīdiē (adv.), *the day before.* Cf. 179, 2.
prōcōnsul, -is, m., *governor.*
vesper, vesperī, m., *evening.*

LESSON XXV

abeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go away, leave.*
aetās, -tātis, f., *age.*
amplus, -a, -um, *large, great;* **verba amplissima**, *the strongest terms.*
arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *consider, think.*
causa, -ae, f., *cause, case, question, subject.*
conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *assemble, come together.*
frequēns, frequentis, *crowded, in great numbers, numerous.*
frētus, -a, -um, *relying on, trusting in.* With abl. Cf. 137.
gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum, *accomplish,* **geritur**, *take place, happen.*
impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *gain a point, gain one's request.*
ineō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *enter, go in;* **cōnsilium ineō**, *adopt a plan;* **iniēns aetās**, *early manhood.*
iūcundus, -a, -um, *pleasing, pleasant;* **iūcundissimum est**, *it is a very great pleasure.*
māiōrēs, -um, m. pl., *ancestors.* Cf. 3.
mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intrust, instruct, order.* Cf. 262.
occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *seize, occupy, keep busy.*
populāris, -e, *of the people, popular, democratic.*
praemium, -ī, n., *reward, prize, tribute.*
ratiō, ratiōnis, f., *plan, method, means, manner, scheme.*

rēgius, -a, -um, *of a king, with a (the) king, royal.* Cf. 98.
ūniversus, -a, -um, *whole, all, entire.*
virtūs, virtūtis, f., *manliness, courage, virtue, ability.*

LESSON XXVI

abhinc (adv.), *ago.* Cf. 173.
adorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, *attack.*
aggredior (adgredior), -gredī, -gressus sum, *approach, attack.*
agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum; **aliquid agitur**, *something is at stake;* **agitur dē aliquā rē**, *it is a question of something.*
attribuō, -ere, tribuī, -tribūtum, *assign, intrust.*
bona, -ōrum, n. pl., *goods, property.* Cf. 3.
commūnis, -e, *common, of all.*
ferē (adv.), *almost, nearly,* Cf. 411.
paene (adv.), *almost, nearly.* Cf. 411.
gravis, -e, *heavy, oppressive.*
imperium, -ī, a., *power, command, supremacy.*
interest, -esse, -fuit, —, *it is to the interest, it concerns, it is of importance.* Cf. 124–125.
minor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *threaten.*
modus, *kind, character, means, manner;* **ēius modī**, *of such a character, such.*
nōndum (adv.), *not yet.*
quantopere, **quam vehementer**, } *how greatly.*
rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *reign, be king.*
studium, -ī, n., *zeal, enthusiasm, eagerness, study.*
triumphō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *celebrate a triumph; . . . over,* **dē . . .**
vectīgal, -ālis, n., *revenue.*
vehementer (adv.), *very, exceedingly, very much.*

LESSON XXVII

adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *be present, be at hand, aid.*
adventus, -ūs, m., *arrival, approach*
audāx, audācis, *bold, daring.*
colō, -ere, coluī, cultum, *till, cultivate, cherish.*
cūnctus, -a, -um, *all, whole.* Cf. 189.
cūra, -ae, f., *care, concern;* **cūrae est alicui**, *it concerns some one.* Cf. 90–91.
forte (adv.), *perhaps, by chance.*
īgnōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, **nesciō**, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, } *not know, be ignorant.*
inimīcus, -a, -um, *hostile;* **inimīcus**, -ī, m., (personal) *enemy.* Cf. **hostis.**
ita . . . ut . . . nōn, *so . . . that . . . not, without.* Cf. 259, *a.*
mercātor, -ōris, m., *merchant, trader.*
minuō, -ere, minuī, minūtum, *lessen, diminish, make less.* **minuitur**, *lessen, grow less.*
nauta, -ae, m., *sailor.*
nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *sail.*
solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum, *loose;* **(nāvem) solvō**, *set sail, sail.*
pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsum, *weigh out, pay.*
plēnus, -a, -um, *full.* Cf. 113–114.

refertus, -a, -um, *full, crowded.* Cf. 115.
quaestus, -ūs, m., *gain, profit, business.*
turpis, -e, *base, disgraceful.*

LESSON XXVIII

appetēns, -entis, *desirous, eager for, covetous, greedy.* Cf. 113–114.
argentum, -ī, n., silver.
aurum, -ī, n., *gold.*
avidus, -a, -um, *eager, desirous, greedy.* Cf. 113–114.
brevis, -e, *short;* **brevī tempore**, *soon.*
colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *collect, gather.*
effugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitum, *flee, escape, slip from.*
ēlābor, -lābī, -lapsus sum, *slip out, escape, slip from.*
exemplum, -ī, n., *precedent, example.*
iuvō, -āre, iūvī, (iūtum), *help, aid, assist.* Cf. 81.
manus, -ūs, f., *hand, band.*
mox (adv.), *soon.*
nimis (adv.), *too.*
nimium (adv. and indecl. noun), *too much.* Cf. 105.
obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *besiege.*
ōdī, (ōdisse), ōsūrus, *hate.*
oppūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *attack, besiege.*
patrius, -a, -um, *ancestral, of a father, paternal;* **patria**, -ae, f., *fatherland.*
praeda, -ae, f., *booty.*
subsidium, -ī, n., *aid, reënforcement.*
tantus, -a, -um, *so, so great, so large, so important, such, such important.*
tempus, temporis, n., *time;* **difficile tempus**, *crisis.*
trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *hand over, give over, surrender.*
vetus, veteris, *old, ancient, of old.*
vīs, (vīs), f., *force, power, amount, quantity.*

LESSON XXIX

absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *be away, be absent, be distant.*
adferō, -ferre, attulī, adlātum (allātum), *bring to.*
adulēscentia, -ae, f., *youth, manhood.*
auctōritās, -tātis, f., *prestige, influence, authority.*
classis, -is, f., *fleet.*
commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *recall, speak of, mention.*
commūtātiō, -ōnis, f., *change.*
dignitās, -tātis, f., *worth, dignity, prestige.*
extrēmus, -a, -um, *end of, farthest, last.* Cf. 108.
fēlīcitās, -tātis, f., *luck, good fortune, success.*
in aliquō est, *some one possesses* (used of traits of character).
īnsīgnis, -e, *marked, conspicuous, distinguished, remarkable.*
nūper (adv.), *lately, recently, not long ago.*
pār, paris, *equal, like, alike, on a par with, a match for.* Cf. 92.
praedō, -ōnis, m., *robber, pirate, plunderer.*

propter (prep. with acc. case), **ob** (prep. with acc. case), *on account of, because of.*

scientia, -ae, f., *knowledge, acquaintance with.*

singulāris, -e, *special, extraordinary, unusual, remarkable.*

summus, -a, -um, *highest, greatest, (in the) highest (degree).* Cf. 108.

victor, -ōris, m., *victor, conqueror;* as an adj., *victorious.*

LESSON XXX

aspiciō, -ere, aspēxī, aspectum, *look upon, regard, look at.*

avāritia, -ae, f., *greed.*

commendō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intrust.*

cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum (collātum), *bring together, compare.*

dēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *call aside.*

dīripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptum, *seize, plunder, pillage.*

ēgregius, -a, -um, *extraordinary, exceptional.*

fidēs, -eī, f., *trustworthiness, honesty.*

fortūnae, -ārum, f. pl., *fortunes.*

rēs, rērum, f. pl., *fortunes, property.*

innocentia, -ae, f., *blamelessness, integrity, blameless conduct.*

invītus, -a, -um, *unwilling;* frequently to be rendered as an adv., *unwillingly, against one's will.*

mē gerō, *act, behave, conduct myself, act.*

memor, memoris, *mindful, remembering.* Cf. 113–114.

neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *neglect, disregard, pass over.*

serviō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *serve, be a slave to.*

temperantia, -ae, f., *self-control, self-restraint, moderation, temperance.*

LESSON XXXI

administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *manage, carry on, conduct.*

āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *lose.*

commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *recall, recount.*

contemnō, -ere, -tempsī, -temptum, *despise, disregard, hold in contempt.*

dīversus, -a, -um, *separate, distant, various, different.*

exter (us), -a, -um, *outer, outside, foreign.*

maritimus, -a, -um, *of the sea, sea-, naval.*

unde (adv.), *whence, from which.*

valet, valēre, valuit, valitūrus, **potest**, posse, potuit, — *be of importance.* Cf. 66.

LESSON XXXII

amāns, amantis (partic. of **amō**), *loving;* **amāns patriae**, or **amāns reī pūblicae**, *patriotic.*

concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *allow, grant, assign, yield.*

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *carry away, report, confer, devote.*

tribuō, -ere, tribuī, tribūtum, *grant, assign, confer, bestow.*

docĕō, -ēre, -uī, doctum, *teach, show, inform.*

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *point out, show, state, mention, indicate.*

ostendō, -ere, ostendī, ostentum, *show, declare, indicate.*

ōra, -ae, f., *shore, coast;* **ōra maritima**, *sea coast.*

praeditus, -a, -um, *endowed, furnished, supplied, possessing.* With abl.

LESSON XXXIII

fāma, -ae, f., *reputation, fame, glory.*

fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, *enjoy.* Cf. 165.

glōria, -ae, f., *fame, glory, renown.*

quantō . . . tantō, **quō . . . hōc**, } with comparatives, *the . . . the . . .* Cf. 162.

māgnopere (adv.), *very much, greatly.*

particeps, -cipis, *participant, sharer, associate.*

vehementer (adv.), *severely, strongly, very, very much, exceedingly, greatly.*

LESSON XXXIV

avāritia, -ae, f., *greed, avarice.*

cupiditās, -tātis, f., *desire, eagerness, greed.*

libenter (adv.), *gladly, freely.*

laetē (adv.), *gladly, joyfully.*

mīlitāris, -e, *of the soldiers, military;* **rēs mīlitāris** (sing.), *military affairs, the art of war.*

minae, -ārum, f. pl., *threats;* **vīs et minae**, *threats of force.*

plūs (noun), *more.*

magis (adv.), *more.*

quisquis, quicquid, *whoever, whosoever.*

quīcumque, quiccumque, *whichsoever, whosoever, whatsoever.*

LESSON XXXV

abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *throw away, throw down, lay down.*

aegrē (adv.), *with difficulty, scarcely, hardly.*

vix (adv.), *with difficulty, hardly, scarcely.*

colloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum, *speak with, confer, talk together.*

conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *cry out, shout.*

condiciō, -ōnis, f., *terms, conditions.*

dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *let go away, let slip, neglect, abandon.*

efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum, *carry away, elate.*

ēlābor, ēlābī, ēlapsus sum, *slip out, escape.*

fidēs, -eī, f., *trustworthiness, word (of honor).*

impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *obtain* (a request), *be successful* (in obtaining something); **impetrō ab aliquō**, *prevail upon any one.*

interpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *interpose, introduce, pledge.*

occāsiō, -ōnis, f., *opportunity, chance.*

ōrdō, ōrdinis, m., *rank.*

permoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *move, affect, alarm.*
perpetuus, -a, -um, *permanent, everlasting;* **in perpetuum**, *forever.*
perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *disturb, throw into confusion.*
procul (adv.), *at a distance, from a distance, far away.*

LESSON XXXVI

absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *be absent;* **absēns**, absentis (partic. of **absum**), *absent;* **mē absente**, *in my absence.*
arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, *summon.*
māgnum iter, māgnī itineris, n., *a forced march.*
impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *drive on, impel, influence.*
praestat, -āre, -stitit, —, *it is better.*
peragō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *conduct through, carry through, finish, accomplish.*
recuperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *get back, recover, regain.*
rumor, -ōris, m., *rumor, story, report, account.*
subiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *place under, subject.*

LESSON XXXVII

adeō (adv.), *so, so much.*
amplius (adv., comp. of **amplē**), *farther, longer, more, farther away.* Cf. 159.
beneficium, -ī, n., *a kindness, a favor, a service.*
certus, -a, -um, *fixed, appointed, certain.*
cōnfiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum, *confess, acknowledge.*
dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *owe, ought;* in passive, *be due.*
dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead away, conduct off.*
ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead out.*
imperītus, -a, -um, *unacquainted with;* **imperītus rērum**, *ignorant.*
iūs, iūris, n., *right, rights, control.*
multitūdō, -dinis, f., *the multitude, the people.*
opera, -ae, f., **auxilium**, -ī, n., } *help, aid.*
praesertim (adv.), *especially.*
recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *refuse.* Cf. 269–270. With dat. of the person.
referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum, *bring back, return;* **grātiam referō**, *return thanks, make a grateful return, requite.*
remittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send back, return.*
resistō, -ere, -stitī, —, *resist, hold out against.* Cf. 79–80.
servitūs, -tūtis, f., *slavery, servitude.*
stipendium, -ī, n., *tax, tribute.*
superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *overcome, subdue.*

LESSON XXXVIII

abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *hurl (away), cast aside.*
aciēs, -ēī, f., *line (of battle).*
admittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *let go;* **equō admissō**, *with horse at full speed.*
aequus, -a, -um, *equal, favorable.*

inīquus, -a, -um, *unequal, unfavorable.*
appetō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, *seek for, aim at, thrust at.*
arduus, -a, -um, *steep.*
ascēnsus, -ūs, m., *ascent.*
cernō, -ere, crēvī, crētum, *distinguish, see, descry.*
cōnspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum, *catch sight of, espy, see.*
concīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *kill, slay, cut down.*
convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum, *turn about;* **mē convertō**, *face about.*
expedītus, -a, -um, *light armed, unencumbered.*
levis, -e, *light.*
prōcurrō, -ere, -cucurrī *or* -currī, -cursum, *run forward, charge.*
praecurrō, -ere, -cucurrī *or* -currī, -cursum, *run on before, hasten in advance.*
sublevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *assist, help.*
tergum, -ī, n., *back;* **terga vertō**, *turn and flee;* **ā tergō**, *in the rear.*
tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, *raise, remove, destroy, make way with.*
umerus, -ī, m., *shoulder.*
ūnā (adv.), *along, together;* **ūnā cum**, *along with.*
uterque, utraque, utrumque, *either, both.*
vallēs, -is, f., *valley.*
vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *avoid, escape.*
vertō, -ere, vertī, versum, *turn, change.*

LESSON XXXIX

adeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go to, approach.*
aestimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *value, estimate, consider.* Cf. 122.
cōnfugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitum, *flee* (for refuge).
extrēma fortūna, *extremity* (of danger).
hīc, hūius, *this man = my client.*
luxūria, -ae, f., *luxury, extravagance.*
negōtium, -ī, n., *undertaking, task, business.*
possideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *occupy, possess, be in possession of.*
restō, stāre, -stitī, —, *remain, be left;* **restat ut . . .**, *it remains for . . .* Cf. 264.
sēdēs, -is, f., *abode, seat, dwelling place.*
domicilium, -ī, n., *dwelling place, abode, residence.*
voluptās, -tātis, f., *pleasure.*

LESSON XL

agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *stir up, arouse, agitate, incite.*
agō or **gerō**, in the passive, *go on, happen.*
collēga, -ae, m., *colleague.*
cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, *desire.*
dēbilitātus, -a, -um, *weakened, weak.*
dēfēnsor, -ōris, m., *defender, protector.*
dēmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *move away, remove.*
inermis, -e, *unarmed, without arms.*
malum, -ī, n., *evil, misfortune.*

mōlior, -īrī, -ītus sum, *plan, contrive, attempt, undertake, set about.*

nōmen, nōminis, n., *name;* **meō nōmine**, *in my name, on my account, in my honor.*

obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *throw up against, expose.*

praesidium, -ī, n., *protection, guard, guardianship.*

prīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *deprive.* Cf. 149.

spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *deprive, rob, despoil.* Cf. 149.

triennium, -ī, n., *three years, a period of three years.*

videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum, *see, observe.*

REFERENCES TO GRAMMARS

PART III

NOTE. All the constructions employed in the lessons are explained fully in the Elements of Syntax which comprises the first portion of this book. The following references are for use in connection with the grammars of Gildersleeve and Lodge (G.), Allen and Greenough (A.), Bennett (B.), and Harkness (H.), where such reference is desired. The references in parentheses are to the older edition of Allen and Greenough.

LESSON I. PRONOUNS; AGREEMENT

Pronouns, Personal: G. 304; A. 295 (194); B. 242; H. 500, 4.

Demonstrative: G. 305–308, 310–311; A. 296–298 (195); B. 246–249; H. 505–509.

Reflexive: G. 309, 520–521; A. 300–301 (196, *a*, 1, 2); B. 244–245; H. 502–504.

Relative: G. 610–613, 618; A. 304–308 (198–201); B. 250–251; H. 510, 1, 6.

Indefinite: G. 313–319; A. 309–315 (202–203); B. 252–253; H. 512–516.

Possessive: G. 312; A. 302 (197); B. 243; H. 501.

Adjective Agreement: G. 286, 1; A. 286, *a*, 287, 1–4 (186–189); B. 235, A, 1, 2, B, 1, 2, *a*, *b*; H. 395, 1–3.

Relative, Agreement of: G. 614, R. 1, 2, 5; A. 305, *a*, 306, 307, *d*, 308, *a*, *f* (198, 199, 200, *e*, 201, *a*, *e*); B. 250, 1–3, 251, 2–5; H. 396, 1, 398, 1, 2.

Verb, Agreement of: G. 285, 1–3, 287; A. 316, 317, *a–d* (204, 205, *a*); B. 255, 1–5; H. 392, 1, 2, 4, 5.

Lesson II. Tenses of the Indicative

Present: G. 230; A. 466 (276, *a*); B. 259, 4; H. 533, 1.

Imperfect: G. 231, 233, 234; A. 470, N. 471, *a–c* (277, *a–c*); B. 260, 1–4; H. 530, 534, 1–3, 535, 1.

Future and Future Perfect: G. 242, R. 1, 244, 2; A. 472, *b*, 478, N. (278, *b*, 281, R.); B. 261, 2, 264, *a*; H. 540, 2.

Perfect: G. 235, 236, R., 239; A. 473–476 (279, *e*); B. 262; H. 537, 538, 4.

Pluperfect: G. 241; A. 477 (280); B. 263; H. 539.

Lesson III. The Accusative Case

Direct Object: G. 330, R.; A. 388, *a* (237, *b*); B. 175, 2, *b*; H. 405, 1.

With Compound Verbs: G. 331, R. 1, 2; A. 388, *b*, 395 (237, *d*, 239, 2, *b*); B. 175, 2, *a*, 179, 1–3; H. 406, 413.

Cognate Accusative: G. 333, 1, 2; A. 390, *c* (238, *a–b*); B. 176, 2, 4; H. 409, 1.

Extent: G. 334–336, R. 1; A. 425, *b*, 423, 2 (257, 256, 2); B. 181; H. 417, 1, 3.

Limit of Motion; G. 416, 1, 418, 1, *a*, 337; A. 426, 2, 427, 2 (258, 2, *b*); B. 182, 1–2; H. 418, 3, 419, 1, N.

Double Accusative: G. 339, R. 1–3, 340, R. 1; A. 393, *a*, 396. *a–c* (239, 1, 2, *c–d*); B. 177, 1–3, 178, 1, *a–e*, 2; H. 410, 1, 2, 411, 1–4.

Exclamations: G. 343, 1; A. 397, *d* (240, *d*); B. 183; H. 421, 1.

Lesson IV. Questions: Direct and Indirect; Sequence of Tenses

Direct Questions: G. 454, R. 1, 455, 456; A. 331, 332, *a*, *b* (210–211); B. 162, 1, 2, *a–d*; H. 378, 1–2.

Answers: G. 471; A. 336 (212); B. 162, 5, *a–b*; H. 379, 1.

Moods in Direct Questions: G. 463, 259, 265; A. 157, *a*, 444, *a* (112, *a*, 268); B. 277, 271; H. 557, 559, 4.

Indirect Questions: G. 467; A. 573, 574 (334, *a*, *f*); B. 300, 1, 3; H. 649, II.

Double Questions: G. 458, 459, 460, *a*, *b*; A. 334, 335, N. *a*, *d* (211); B. 162, 4, 300, 4, *a*; H. 380, 1, 650, 1, 2.

Sequence of Tenses: G. 509, 510, 514, 515; A. 482, 1, 2, 483, 484, *a–c*, 485, *a–b*, 575, *a* (283–287); B. 258, 267, 1–3, 268, 1, 269, 1–3; H. 198, 543, 544, 545, I, II.

Lesson V. Purpose Clauses and Result Clauses

Purpose Clauses: G. 545, 1–3, 630; A. 530, 531, 1, 2, *a* (317–318); B. 282, 1, *a*, *d*, 2; H. 568, 6, 7.

Substantive Clauses of Purpose: G. 546, 1, 2, 532; A. 563, *a–b* (331, *a–e*); B. 294, 295, 1, *a*, 2, 4, 5, 296, 1; H. 564, I–III.

Result Clauses: G. 552, 1, 2, R. 1; A. 537, 1, 2, 538 (319, 1–3); B. 284, 1, 2; H. 570, 2.

Substantive Clauses of Result: G. 553, 1–4; A. 567–569, 1–3, 571, *b* (332, *a–c*); B. 297, 1–3; H. 571, 1–4, 566.

Lesson VI. The Dative Case

Indirect Object: G. 345; A. 361, 362, 364, 365 (224, 225, *a*, *d*, *e*); B. 187, I; H. 424.

With Special Verbs: G. 346, R. 1; A. 367, *a*, 372 (227, *a*, *c*, *f*); B. 187, II; H. 426, 1–3.

With Compound Verbs: G. 347; A. 370, *a*, *b*, 371 (228, 230); B. 187, III, 1, 2; H. 429, 1.

Possessor: G. 349, R. 2–4; A. 373, *b* (231, *a*); B. 190; H. 430.

Reference: G. 352; A. 376 (235); B. 188, 1; H. 425, 1, 2, 4.

Agent: G. 355, R., A. 374, *a*, N. 1 (232); B. 189, 1, *a*; H. 431, 1.

Purpose: G. 356; A. 382, 1 (233, *a*); B. 191, 1, 2; H. 433, 425, 3.

With Adjectives: G. 359; A. 384 (234, *a–e*); B. 192, 1, 2; H. 434, 2.

Lesson VII. Verbs of Fearing; Verbs of Preventing, etc.; Verbs of Doubting; Characteristic Clauses

Verbs of Fearing: G. 550, 1, 2; A. 564 (331 *f*); B. 296, 2, *a*; H. 567, 1–4.

Verbs of Preventing, etc.: G. 548, 549, 554; A. 558, *b* (331, *e*, 2, 332, *g*); B. 295, 3, *a*; H. 568, 8, 595, 2, 3.

Verbs of Doubting: G. 555, 2; A. 558, *a* (332, *g*, R. N.); B. 298; H. 595, 1.

Characteristic Clauses: G. 624, 631, 1, 2; A. 535, *a*, *b*, *f* (320, *a*, *b*, *f*); B. 283, 1, 2, 282, 3; H. 591, 1, 4, 5, 7.

Lesson VIII. Gerund; Gerundive; Passive Periphrastic Conjugation; Supine

Gerund: G. 424–426; A. 501, 502, N. (295, R.); B. 338, 1–5; H. 624, 210, 2.

Gerundive: G. 427; A. 503, *a* (294, 296, N.); B. 339, 1–3; H. 623.

Uses of Gerund and Gerundive: G. 428, R. 1, 2, 429, N. 1, 2, 430–433; A. 504, *b*, *c*, 505, *a*, 506, 507, 500, 4 (297, 298, *a*, *c*, 299–301); B. 338 entire, 339, 5, 337, 8, *b*, 2; H. 622, 625, 626, 3, 627–630.

Passive Periphrastic: G. 251, 1, 2, 355; A. 194, *b*, 372, 374, *a*, N. 1, 500, 2 (129, 230, 232, N. 294, *b*); B. 115, 337, 8, *a*), *b*), 1, 189, 1, *a*; H. 237, 302, 6, 7, 431, 1, 621, 1, 2.

Supines: G. 434–436; A. 509–510 (302–303); B. 340, 1, *a*, 2, *b*; H. 633, 635.

Lesson IX. The Genitive with Nouns and Adjectives

Possession: G. 362, R. 1, 2; A. 343, N. 1, *a* (214, 2, *a–b*); B. 198, 199; H. 440, 1, N. 2.

Description: G. 365, R. 2; A. 345, N. *a*, *b*, (215, N. *a*); B. 203, 1, 2; H. 440, 3.

Partitive: G. 367–369, R. 1, 370, 372, R. 2; A. 346, *a*, 1–4, *c*, *d*, *e* (216, *a*, 1–4, *a*, *d*, *e*); B. 201, 1, *a*, *b*, 2, *a*, *b*, 3; H. 440, 5, N. 441, 442, 2, 4, 5, 443, 444, 1.

Objective Genitive with Nouns: G. 363, 1, 2; A. 348, *c* (218, *c*); B. 200, 1; H. 440, 2, N. 1.

With Adjectives: G. 374, 375; A. 349, *a–c* (218, *a–b*); B. 204, 1; H. 450, 451, 1–3, 453, 1.

Predicate Genitive: G. 366, R. 2; A. 343, *b* (214, 1, *c–d*); B. 198, 3, 203, 5; H. 447, 439, 3, 4.

With causā: G. 373, R. 1, 2; A. 359, *b* (223, *e*); B. 198, 1; H. 475, 2.

Lesson X. Genitive with Verbs

Verbs of Memory, etc.: G. 376, R. 1, 2; A. 350, *a*, *b*, *d*, 351, N. (219, *a*, *b*, *c*, N.); B. 206, 1, 2, *a*, 207, *a*, *b*; H. 454, 1, 2, 455.

Verbs of Emotion: G. 377, R. 3; A. 354, *a–c* (221, *a–d*); B. 209, 1, *a*, 2; H. 457, 2, 3.

Verbs of Accusing, etc.: G. 378, R. 3; A. 352, 353, 1 (220, *a–d*); B. 208, 1, 2, *a*, *b*; H. 456, 1, 3.

Interest and rĕfert: G. 381, N. 1, 382, 1, 2; A. 355, *a* (222, *a*); B. 210, 211; H. 449, 1, 3.

Verbs of Rating, etc.: G. 379, 380, 1, R. 2; A. 417, *c* (252, *a*, *d*); B. 203, 3, 4; H. 448, 1, 2, 4, 5.

Lesson XI. Conditions

General Statement: G. 589, 594; A. 512, 514, A–C (304, 305, *a–c*); B. 301; H. 572, 573.

Logical Conditions: G. 595; A. 515, *a*, 516, 1, *a*, *c*, *d* (306, *a*, 307, 1, *a*, *c*, *d*); B. 302, 1, 4; H. 574, 2.

Ideal Conditions: G. 596, 1; A. 516, 2, *b*, *c* (307, 2, *b*, *c*); B. 303; H. 576, 1.

Unreal Conditions: G. 597, R. 3; A. 517, *c*, *d* (308, *c*, *d*); B. 304, 1–3, *a*, *b*; H. 579, 1, 583.

Protasis Implied: G. 600, 1; A. 521, *a*, *b* (310, *a*, *b*); B. 305, 1; H. 575, 9.

Lesson XII. Wishes; Potential Subjunctive; Conditional Clauses of Comparison

Wishes: G. 260, 261, R.; A. 441, 442, *b* (267, *b*, *c*); B. 279, 1, 2; H. 558, 1, 2, 4.

Potential Subjunctive: G. 257, 258, 600, 2; A. 446, 447, 1, 2, 3, N. (311, *a*); B. 280, 1, *a*, 2–4; H. 552, 553, 1, 2, 554–556.

Conditional Clauses of Comparison: G. 602; A. 524 (312); B. 307, 1, 2; H. 584, 1, 2.

Lesson XIII. Commands; Entreaties; Prohibitions

Commands: G. 267, R., 268, 1–2; A. 448, 449, *a* (269); B. 281, 1; H. 522, 560, 2.

Entreaties: G. 263, 1, 3; A. 439 (266); B. 274, 275, 1; H. 559, 1–2.

Prohibitions: G. 270, R. 2; A. 450 (269, *a*, 2); B. 276, *a*, *c*; H. 561, 1, 2.

Lesson XIV. The Infinitive

Infinitive as Subject: G. 422, 424, 535; A. 452, 1–3, 454 (270, 1–3, *a*–*b*); B. 327, 1, 2, 330; H. 615, 616, 1, 2.

Infinitive as Object and Complementary Infinitive: G. 423, 1, 2, 532, 533; A. 456, 458, 563, *a*–*d* (271, *b*, *c*, 331, *a*–*d*); B. 328, 1, 2, 331, II–V; H. 607, 1, 2, 614, 565, 2, 3, 5.

Lesson XV. The Infinitive (*Concluded*): Indirect Discourse

Infinitive in Indirect Discourse: G. 527, R. 4, 5; A. 459, 579, 580, *b*, *c*, 581 (272, 336, 1, 2, *a*); B. 331, 314, 1, 2; H. 613, 1–3, 642, 1.

Tenses of the Infinitive: G. 529–531, N. 4; A. 486, *a*, 584, *a* (288, *a*, 336, A); B. 270, 1, *a*–*c*, 2; H. 617, 618, 2, 619, 1.

Impersonal Construction: G. 528, 1, 2; A. 582, *a* (336, 1, *a*, 2); B. 332, *a*)–*d*), N; H. 611, 1, 2, N. 1, 2.

Indirect Discourse: G. 648, 650, 653–655, R. 1; A. 580, 588, *a* (336); B. 313, 314, 1, 3, 318; H. 641, 643, 3, 644, 2.

LESSON XVI. THE ABLATIVE CASE

Means or Instrument: G. 401; A. 409 (248, *c*); B. 218, H. 476.

Agent: G. 401; A. 405 (246); B. 216; H. 468.

Manner: G. 399, N. 1; A. 412, *a*, *b* (248); B. 220, 1; H. 473, 3, N.

Accompaniment: G. 392; A. 413 (248, *a–b*); B. 222; H. 473, I.

Cause: G. 408; A. 404 (245); B. 219; H. 475.

Description (Quality): G. 400; A. 415, 345, N. *a*, *b* (251, 215, N.); B. 224, 1, 3; H. 473, 2, N. 1, 2.

Specification (Respect): G. 397; A. 418 (253); B. 226; H. 480.

LESSON XVII. ABLATIVE CASE (*Continued*)

Time: G. 393; A. 423, 1 (256); B. 230–231; H. 486, 487.

Place Where: G. 385; A. 426, 3 (254); B. 228; H. 483.

Place Whence: G. 390, 1; A. 426, 1 (258, 1); B. 229; H. 491, I, 2.

Separation: G. 390, 2, 3, 405; A. 400–402, *a*, 356, N. (243, *a*, *b*, *d*, *f*); B. 214, 1, *a*)–*d*), 2; H. 462, 1, 463, 465, 1.

Origin and Material: G. 395–396; A. 403, 1, 2, *a* (244, *a–d*); B. 215; H. 467.

Comparison: G. 398; A. 406, 407, *a–c* (247, *a–c*); B. 217, 1–3; H. 471, 1, 3, 4.

Degree of Difference: G. 403; A. 414 (250); B. 223; H. 479.

Price: G. 404; A. 416 (252); B. 225; H. 478, 1.

Ūtor, etc.: G. 407, N. 2 (*d*); A. 410, *a* (249, *a*); B. 218, 1; H. 477, I.

Opus and **Ūsus**: G. 406, N. 2; A. 411, *a* (243, *e*); B. 218, 2; H. 477, III, N.

LESSON XVIII. CONDITIONS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE; DEPENDENT UNREAL CONDITIONS

Conditions in Indirect Discourse: G. 650, R., 653, 654, 597, R. 4; A. 589, 1, 2, *a*, *b*, 1–4, 485, *h* (337, 287, *f*); B. 314, 1, 319, A, B, *a*, 320, A, B, 321 entire; H. 646, 1, 647, 2, 3.

Dependent Unreal Conditions: G. 597, R. 5; A. 517, *d*, examples 3–4 (308, *d*, examples 3–4); B. 322 entire; H. 648 entire.

LESSON XIX. TEMPORAL CLAUSES: CUM-TEMPORAL; POSTQUAM, ETC.

Clauses with **cum**:

a. Indicative: G. 580, 583; A. 545, 547 (325); B. 288, 1, A, 289; H. 600, I, 601.

b. Subjunctive: G. 585; A. 546, N. 1 (325); B. 288, 1, B; H. 600, II.

c. Exceptions to *b*: G. 581, 584; A. 548, 546, *a*, 545, *a* (325, *a*–*c*); B. 288, B, *a*, 2, 3; H. 600, I, 1, 601, 2, 4.

Postquam, etc.: G. 561, 563, 2; A. 543 (324); B. 287, 1, 3; H. 602, 1.

LESSON XX. TEMPORAL CLAUSES (*Continued*): DUM-CLAUSES, PRIUSQUAM, ETC.: PROVISO

Dum, *while* — Incomplete Coextension: G. 570; A. 556 (328, *a*); B. 293, I; H. 604, 603, I.

Dum, *while* — Complete Coextension: G. 569; A. 555 examples (328); B. 293, II; H. 603, I.

Dum, *until:* G. 571, 572; A. 553, 554 (328); B. 293, III, 1, 2; H. 603, II, 1, 2.

Proviso: G. 573; A. 528 (314); B. 310, 1, II; H. 587.

Priusquam, etc.: G. 574, 577; A. 551, *a*, *b* (327, *a*); B. 291, 292, 1, *a*)–*c*); H. 605, I.

LESSON XXI. PARTICIPLES; ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

Tenses of Participles: G. 282, 283; A. 489–493 (290, *a*–*d*); B. 336, 1–5; H. 640, 1.

Participles as Nouns or Adjectives: G. 437, 438; A. 488, 494, *a* (291, *a*–*b*, 293); B. 337, 1; H. 636, 640, 1, 494, 495.

Ablative Absolute: G. 409, 410, R. 1, 3; A. 419, *a*, 493, 1, 2 (255, *a*–*c*); B. 227, 1, 2, 4; H. 489, 1, 3, 640, 4.

Participles for Clauses: G. 664–668; A. 490, 1, 2, 496, N. 1, 2, 420, 1–5, 497 (292, *a*, 255, *d*); B. 337, 2, *a*–*f*; H. 637, 638, 1, 2, 639.

LESSON XXII. EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE

1. Place Where:

a. General Rule: G. 385; A. 426, 3 (258, *c*, 1); B. 228; H. 483.

b. Special Uses: G. 385, 3, N. 1, 386, R. 2, 411, R. 1–4; A. 427, 3, 428, *b*, *d* (258, *c*, 2, *d*–*f*); B. 228, 1, *a*)–*c*); H. 483, 2, 484, 1, 2, N. 1, 2, 485, 2.

2. Place Whence:

a. General Rule: G. 390, 1; A. 426, 1 (258, 1); B. 229; H. 491, I, 2.

b. Special Uses: G. 390, 2, line 3, 391, R. 1, line 5; A. 427, 1, 428, *a*–*d* (258, *a*, N. 1); B. 229, 1, *a*), *b*), 2; H. 491, II, 2, 462, 3, 4.

3. Place Whither:

a. General Rule: G. 345, R. 2, 416, 1, 418, 1; A. 426, 2 (258, 2); B. 182, 2; H. 418.

b. Special Uses: G. 337, R. 2, 4; A. 427, 2, 428, *c*, *k* (258, 2, *b*, N. 1–3); B. 182, 1, *a*), *b*); H. 418, 4, 419, 1, N. 2.

Lesson XXIII. Causal and Concessive Clauses

Causal Clauses. G. 586, 633, 541, 542, 540; A. 540, *a–d* (321, 1–2); B. 286, 1–2, 283, 3, *a*); H. 588, 598, 592.

Concessive Clauses: G. 603–609, 587, 634; A. 527 entire, 549, 535, *e* (313, *a–f*, *h*); B. 308, 309 entire, 283, 3, *b*; H. 585, 586, I, II, 1–3, 598.

Lesson XXIV. Expressions and Constructions of Time

Time When and Within Which: G. 393, R. 1, 2, 5; A. 423, 424, *a* (256, 259, *a*); B. 230, 1, 2, 231; H. 486, 1, 487, 1, 2.

Duration of Time: G. 336, R. 1, 2, 4; A. 423, 2, 424, *a* (256); B. 181, 1, 2; H. 417, 1.

"Before" and "After": G. 403, N. 4. *a–c*; A. 424, *f* (259, *d*); B. 357, 1; H. 488, 1, 2.

Dates: G. pp. 491–492; A. 630–631, 424, *g* (376, 259, *e*); B. 371–372; H. 754–755.

ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY

(The numbers refer to sections.)

A

abandon, leave behind, relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum; dēserō, -ere, -seruī, -sertum; **give up, throw away,** abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.

abide, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus; **abide by something,** in aliquā rē maneō.

ability, mental ability, ingenium, -ī, *n.*; **ability, excellence,** virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*

able (be), possum, posse, potuī, —. *With infin.*

about, concerning, dē, *prep. with abl. case.* **around,** circum, *prep. with acc. case;* apud, *prep. with acc. case;* **nearly,** circiter, *adv., used with numerals.*

above, suprā, *adv. and prep. with acc. case.*

abroad, forīs, *adv.*

absence (in one's), absēns, absentis, *adj.*; **in my absence,** mē absente.

absent, absēns, absentis.

absent (be), absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus; . . . **ab aliquā rē, from something.**

abuse, abūtor, -ūtī, -ūsus sum. Cf. 165.

accomplish, cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum; gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum; adsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum.

accord (of my own, etc.), meā sponte. Cf. 38.

accordance with (in), dē *or* ex *with the abl., or the abl. alone.* Cf. 138–139.

according to, *expressed by the abl., with or without* dē *or* ex. Cf. 138–139.

accordingly, itaque; igitur. Cf. 412; quā rē.

account of (on), propter, *prep. with acc. case;* ob, *prep. with acc. case.* Cf. 135–136; **on my account,** meō nōmine; meā sponte.

accuse, accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. Cf. 121.

accustomed (be), soleō, -ēre, solitus sum; cōnsuēvī. Cf. 209. *Also sometimes expressed by the imperfect tense.* Cf. 203.

accustomed (become), cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum. Cf. 209.

achievements, rēs gestae, rērum gestārum, *f. pl.*

Achilles, Achillēs, -is, *m.*

across, trāns, *prep. with acc. case.*

across (lead), trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum. Cf. 62–63.

act (*noun*), factum, -ī, *n.*; gestum, -ī, *n.*

act (*verb*), mē gerō. *Reflexive verb.*

actuate, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum.

add, addō, -ere, addidī, additum.

added to this is the fact that . . ., accēdit (-ere, accessit) ut . . . Cf. 264.

address, speak to, adloquor, -loquī -locūtus sum; appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **address (soldiers, etc.)**, cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum.

Adiatunnus, Adiatunnus, -ī, *m.*

admire, mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum; admīror, -ārī, -ātus sum.

adopt, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum; ineō, -īre, -iī, -itum; cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum; **adopt a plan**, cōnsilium capiō; cōnsilium ineō.

Aduatuci, Aduātucī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, *a tribe of the Belgians.*

advance, prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum; prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum; **advance to the attack**, sīgna īnferō, -ferre, intulī, illātum.

advantage, ūsus, -ūs, *m.*

advantage (be of), interest, -esse, -fuit, -futūrus; rēfert, -ferre, -tulit. Cf. 124–125.

advantageous, *dat. of* ūsus *according to* 90. Cf. also 483, 2.

advice, sententia, -ae, *f.*; cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*

advice (ask), cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -sultum, *with acc. case.* Cf. 80.

advise, moneō, -ēre, monuī, monitum. Cf. 262, 117.

Aeduan, Aeduus, -a, -um; Aeduus, -ī, *m.*, *an Aeduan.*

affair, rēs, reī, *f.*

afraid (be), timeō, -ēre, -uī, —; vereor, -ērī, veritus sum; metuō, -ere, metuī, —. Cf. 266–268.

Africa, Africa, -ae, *f.*

after, post, *adv. and prep. with acc. case;* postquam, *conj.* Cf. 283–284. cum (cf. 284), posteā, *adv.*

afterward, posteā, *adv.*

again, a second time, iterum; **(back) again**, rūrsus.

against, contrā, *prep. with acc. case;* in, *prep. with acc. case.*

ago, ante; abhinc. Cf. 173–174. **two days ago**, nūdius tertius. (*Indeclinable.*)

agree, cōnsentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum; . . . **with some one**, . . . cum aliquō.

ahead (send), praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.

aid (*noun*), auxilium, -ī, *n.*; opera, -ae, *f.*; subsidium, -ī, *n.*

aid (*verb*), iuvō, -āre, iūvī, (iūtum); adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, (-iūtum); adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus. Cf. 80–81.

Alabama, Alabāma, -ae, *f.*

alarm, commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum; permoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.

Alexander, Alexander, -drī, *m.*

alike, similis, -e. Cf. 92, 96.

all, every, omnis, -e; **all, the whole**, tōtus, -a, -um; ūniversus, -a, -um; cūnctus, -a, -um.

all (of), commūnis, -e.
all (not at), nihil, *adv.* Cf. 74.
Allobroges, Allobrogēs, -um, *m. pl., a tribe of the Gauls.*
allow, patior, patī, passus sum; sinō, -ere, sīvī, situm. Cf. 329. permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum. Cf. 262.
allowed (it is), licet, licēre, licuit. Cf. 325, 3.
ally, socius, -ī, *m.*
almost, paene; ferē. Cf. 411.
alone, sōlus, -a, -um; ūnus, -a, -um.
along with, ūnā cum, *with abl.*
Alps, Alpēs, -ium, *f. pl.*
already, iam, *adv.*
also, etiam; quoque; **not only . . . but als** , nōn modo (sōlum) . . . sed (vērum) etiam.
although, cum; quamquam; tametsī, etsī, etiamsī; quamvīs; licet. Cf. 314–322.
altogether, omnīnō, *adv.*
always, semper, *adv.*
ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
Ambiorix, Ambiorīx, -īgis, *m., a prince of the Eburones.*
among, apud, *prep. with acc. case;* in, *prep. with acc. or abl.* Cf. in.
amount, great number, multitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
ample, amplus, -a, -um.
ancestors, māiōrēs, -um, *m. pl.*
ancestral, patrius, -a, -um.
anchor, ancora, -ae, *f.;* **at anchor**, in ancorā *or* in ancorīs.
ancient, vetus, veteris; antīquus, -a, -um.
and, et; —que; atque, ac. Cf. 394.
and so, itaque, igitur. Cf. 412, 1.
anger, īra, -ae, *f.*
announce, nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
another, alius, -a, -ud. Cf. 56.
answer (*noun*), respōnsum, -ī, *n.;* **make answer**, respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum.
answer (*verb*), respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum.
Antioch, Antiochīa, -ae, *f.*
Antonius, Antōnius, -ī, *m.*
any, ūllus, -a, -um; aliquī, -qua, -quod; quī, qua, quod; **any . . . however great**, quantusvīs, quanta-, quantum-. Cf. 46–56.
any one, anything, aliquis, aliquid; quis, quid; **any one at all, anything at all**, quisquam, quicquam. Cf. 47–49.
appease, plācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
appoint, dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum; creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum; **choose as lēgātus**, lēgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. Cf. 67–69.
approach (*noun*), adventus, -ūs, *m.;* aditus, -ūs, *m.*
approach (*verb*), appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; adeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
approve, probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
Aquitania, Aquītānia, -ae, *f.*
Aquitanians, Aquītānī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
Archias, Archiās, -ae, *m.*
Archelaus, Archelāus, -ī, *m.*
argument, ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
Ariobarzanes, Ariobarzānēs, -is, *m.*

Ariovistus, Ariovistus, -ī, *m.*

arise, orior, -īrī, ortus sum; coörior, -īrī, -ortus sum.

arm, armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **armed men**, armātī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*; **light armed**, expedītus, -a, -um.

Armenia, Armenia, -ae, *f.*

arms, arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*

army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*; *the general term;* **army on the march**, āgmen, āgminis, *n.*; **army drawn up in line of battle**, aciēs, -ēī, *f.*

around, circum, *prep. with acc. case;* apud, *prep. with acc. case.*

arouse, commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum; excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

arrange, cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. Cf. 382.

arrest, comprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsum.

arrival, adventus, -ūs, *m.*

arrive, perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum; adveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum; . . . **at**, . . . **in** *or* **ad** *with acc. case.*

art, ars, artis, *f.*

Arverni, Arvernī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, *a tribe of the Gauls.*

as, ut, *conj. with the indicative;* quem ad modum.

as . . . as, tam . . . quam.

as follows, ita.

as great, tantus, -a, -um; **as great as**, tantus . . . quantus.

as (the same), īdem quī. Cf. 43.

as if, tamquam sī; velutsī; acsī; quasi. Cf. 313.

as long as, dum. Cf. 285.

as much as, tantus . . . quantus.

as . . . as possible, quam *with the superlative.*

as soon as, simulatque, simulac; cum prīmum; ut prīmum. Cf. 283.

as soon as possible, quam prīmum.

ascend, ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascēnsum.

ascent, ascēnsus, -ūs, *m.*

Asia, Asia, -ae, *f.*; **of** *or* **in Asia**, *adj.*, Asiāticus, -a, -um.

Asiatic, Asiāticus, -a, -um.

ask, quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum; rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; pōscō, -ere, popōscī, —. Cf. 70–72.

ask advice, cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, cōnsultum.

ask for, rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. Cf. 70–72.

assassinate, occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum; interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.

assemble, come together, conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum; **assemble, bring together**, comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; condūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.

assert, praedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum; cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

assign, commendō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; attribuō, -ere, -tribuī, -tribūtum.

assist, iuvō, -āre, iūvī, (iūtum); adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, (-iūtum); adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus; sublevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

associate, socius, -ī, *m.*; comes, comitis, *m.*
assure, cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
at. Cf. 167, 194 *a*.
at all (not at), nihil.
at daybreak, prīmā lūce.
at first, prīmum.
at hand (be), adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.
Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
Atlanta, Atlanta, -ae, *f.*
at last, tandem; dēmum.
at length, tandem; dēmum.
at once, statim.
Atrebates, Atrebātēs, -um, *m. pl.*
at stake (be), *passive of* agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.
attack (*noun*), impetus, -ūs, *m.*; oppūgnātiō, -ōnis, *f.*; **make an attack on some one**, in aliquem impetum faciō.
attack (*verb*), **of towns**, etc., oppūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **of persons**, petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; adgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum; adorior, -īrī, -ortus sum; lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; impetum in aliquem faciō.
attempt (*noun*), cōnātus, -ūs, *m.*; **make an attempt**, cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum; temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
attempt (*verb*), cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum; temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
at the foot of, sub, *prep. with abl. case.*
at the same time, simul; ūnō tempore.
at the time when, tum cum. Cf. 280.
Attius, Attius, -ī, *m.*
attribute, tribuō, -ere, tribuī, tribūtum; dō, dare, dedī, datum.
audacity, audācia, -ae, *f.*
Aulus, Aulus, -ī, *m.*
authority, auctōritās, -tātis, *f.*
avenge, ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum.
avert, dēpellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum; āvertō, -ere, āvertī, āversum.
avoid, vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
await, exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
aware, cōnscius, -a, -um; **aware of something**, alicūius reī cōnscius.
away (be), absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus; . . . **from anything**, . . . ab aliquā rē.
Axona, Axona, -ae, *f., a river of Gaul.*

B

back, tergum, -ī, *n.*
back (get), **regain**, recuperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
baggage, impedīmenta, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
band, manus, -ūs, *f.*
bank, rīpa, -ae, *f.*
barbarian, barbarus, -ī, *m.*
barbarous, barbarus, -a, -um.
barely, vix, *adv.*; parvō discrīmine.
battle, proelium, -ī, *n.*; pūgna, -ae, *f.*; **begin battle, join battle, engage in battle**, proelium committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
battle (field of), aciēs, -ēī, *f.*
battle (line of), aciēs, -ēī, *f.*
B.C., ante Chrīstum nātum. Cf. 183-184.
be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.
be able, possum, posse, potuī, —.

be absent, absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus.
be accustomed, soleō, -ēre, solitus sum; cōnsuēvī. Cf. 209-210.
be afraid, timeō, -ēre, -uī, —; vereor, -ērī, -itus sum; metuō, -ere, metuī, —. Cf. 266–268.
be at hand, adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.
be at the head of, praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus. *With dat. case.*
be away, absum, -esse, -fuī, āfutūrus.
be distant, absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus.
be done, fīō, fierī, factus sum.
be eager, cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
be ignorant of, īgnōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; nesciō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītum.
be in command of, be in charge of, praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus. *With dat. case.*
be informed, certior fīō, fierī, factus sum.
be lacking, dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.
be left, supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.
be made, fīō, fierī, factus sum.
be near, adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.
be of advantage, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus.
be present, adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.
be silent, taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
be to the interest of, interest, -esse, -fuit; rēfert, -ferre, -tulit. Cf. 124–125.
be willing, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —.
be willing, volō, velle, voluī, —.
be without, careō, -ēre, caruī, caritūrus. Cf. 153.
beat, vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum.
beautiful, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum.
because, quod; cum; quoniam; quia. Cf. 291–297.
because of, propter, *prep. with acc. case;* ob, *prep. with acc. case;* *abl. case.* Cf. 135–136.
become, fīō, fierī, factus sum.
become accustomed, cōnsuēscō, -ere, cōnsuēvī, cōnsuētum. Cf. 209.
become master of the situation, rērum potior, -īrī, -ītus sum. Cf. 166.
befall, accidō, -ere, -cidī, —.
before, priusquam, *conj.;* antequam, *conj.* Cf. 289. ante, *adv. and prep. with acc. case.* anteā, *adv.;* ad populum loquor, **speak before the people.**
before (on the day), prīdiē. Cf. 179, 2, 181.
before this, anteā, *adv.*
beg, ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. Cf. 70–72, 262.
begin, incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum; coepī, coeptum. Coepī *is found only in the perfect system. When a complementary infinitive dependent on* coepī *is passive, the passive forms of* coepī *should be used.*
begin battle, proelium committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
beginning, initium, -ī, *n.*

behalf of (in *or* on), prō, *prep. with abl. case.*
behind, post, *prep. with acc. case.*
behold, aspiciō, -ere, aspēxī, aspectum.
Belgian, Belga, -ae, *m.*
Belgium, Belgium, -ī, *n.*
believe, crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditum. Cf. 79–80.
Bellovaci, Bellovacī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
besides (this), praetereā, *adv.*
besiege, oppūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum.
bestow, mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; dō, dare, dedī, datum.
bestowal. Cf. 368.
betake one's self, mē cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
betake one's self to flight, mē in fugam dō.
better (it is), praestat, -stāre, -stitit.
between, inter, *prep. with acc. case.*
Bibrax, Bibrax, Bibractis, *f., a town of the Remi.*
bidding, imperātum, -ī, *n.*
birth, nātus, -ūs, *m.;* **before the birth of Christ**, ante Chrīstum nātum. Cf. 183–184.
bitter, acerbus, -a, -um.
blame, culpa, -ae, *f.*
block, interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum.
boat, nāvis, -is, *f.*
body, corpus, corporis, *m.*
Boii, Boiī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
bold, audāx, audācis; fortis, -e.
boldly, audācter, *adv.*
boldness, audācia, -ae, *f.*
book, liber, librī, *m.*
booty, praeda, -ae, *f.*
born (be), nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum.
Bosporus, Bosporus, -ī, *m.;* **people of the Bosporus**, Bosporānī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
both, uterque, utraque, utrumque. Cf. 55.
both . . . and, et . . . et; cum . . . tum. Cf. 399, 280.
bound, contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.
boundary, fīnis, -is, *m.*
boy, puer, puerī, *m.*
boyhood, pueritia, -ae, *f.*
brave, fortis, -e.
bravely, fortiter.
bravery, virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*
break camp, castra moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum.
break out, arise, orior, -īrī, ortus sum; coörior, -īrī, -ortus sum.
break up, disiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.
bribe, sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*
bring, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum; portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
bring about, efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum; adsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum. Cf. 264.
bring forth, bring out, prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
bring in, īnferō, -ferre, intulī, inlātum (illātum); importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
bring to, adferō, -ferre, attulī, adlātum (allātum).
bring to a finish, bring to a conclusion. Cf. finish.
bring to light, illūstrō, -āre, -āvī,

be absent, absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus.
be accustomed, soleō, -ēre, solitus sum; cōnsuēvī. Cf. 209-210.
be afraid, timeō, -ēre, -uī, —; vereor, -ērī, -itus sum; metuō, -ere, metuī, —. Cf. 266–268.
be at hand, adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.
be at the head of, praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus. *With dat. case.*
be away, absum, -esse, -fuī, āfutūrus.
be distant, absum, -esse, āfu[illegible] āfutūrus.
be done, fīō, fierī, factus su[illegible]
be eager, cupiō, -ere, -īvī, [illegible]
be ignorant of, īgnōrō, -ā[illegible] -ātum; nesciō, -īre, -ītum.
be in command of, [illegible]upī, praesum, -esse. [illegible], *n.* *With dat. cas[illegible]* -upō, -āre, -āvī,
be informed, [illegible]
factus sur[illegible] *autem.* Cf. 397, 412.
be lackin[illegible] *but also*, sed (vērum) etiam.
-futūr[illegible] *sīn.* Cf. 299, 3.
be lef[illegible] *of a person*, ā *or* ab *with abl.*
-fu[illegible] *otherwise the abl. with-*
be [illegible] *out a prep.* Cf. 127–130.
by *by far*, longē, *adv.*

C

Caesar, Caesar, Caesaris, *m.*
calamity, calamitās, -tātis, *f.*
call, call by name, appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **summon, call**, vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. Cf. 58, 67–69.
call aside, dēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
be willing, volō, velle, [illegible]ī,
be without, careō, [illegible]
caritūrus. Cf. [illegible] *pl.*;
beat, vincō, -ere, [illegible] -ere,
beautiful, pul[illegible] locō,
chrum. [illegible] **camp**,
because, [illegible] mōvī,
quia.
becaus[illegible] [illegible],—.
acc[illegible] vae tabu-
[illegible]um, *f. pl.*
b[illegible] [illegible]., expūgnō,
[illegible], *general term*,
[illegible]ēpī, captum.
[illegible]ō, -ōnis, *m.*
[illegible]ūra, -ae, *f.*; dīligentia, -ae, *f.*; **foresight**, prūdentia, -ae, *f.*
careful, dīligēns, -gentis.
carefully, dīligenter.
carry, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum; portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **carry (to)**, adferō, -ferre, attulī, adlātum (allātum).
carry on, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.
carry out, cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum; cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum; **carry out commands**, iūssa (imperāta) faciō.
Carthage, Carthāgō, -ginis, *f., a city of Africa.*
Carthaginian, Carthāginiēnsis, -is, *m., a citizen of Carthage.*
case, causa, -ae, *f.*; rēs, reī, *f.*; **plead a case**; causam dīcō.
case (this being the), quae cum ita sint.
Cassius, Cassius, -ī, *m.*
cast out, ēiciō, -ere, ēiēcī, ēiectum.
Casticus, Casticus, -ī, *m.*

capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.
ght of, cōnspiciō, -ere, -spectum; cōnspicor, sum.
na, -ae, *m.*
s, *m.*
ī, *m.*
: **plead one's**
.; equitēs,
ī, —;
.
.e, -āvī,
a **triumph**
one, dē aliquō
, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
eltae, -ārum, *m. pl.*
sor, cēnsor, -ōris, *m.*
centurion, centūriō, -ōnis, *m.*
certain, a certain, quīdam, quaedam, quiddam. Cf. 51. **certain, fixed**, certus, -a, -um.
Cethegus, Cethēgus, -ī, *m.*
chain, vinculum, -ī, *n.*; **in chains**, ex vinculīs.
chance, opportunity, facultās, -tātis, *f.*; **chance, fortune**, cāsus, -ūs, *m.*
change (*noun*), commūtātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
change (*verb*), mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum.
character (of such a), ēius modī. Cf. 102, 275, 4.
charge (be in), praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus. *With dat. case.* Cf. 83.
charge (place or put in), praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum. Cf. 84.
check, reprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum; opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum; retardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
check (hold in), coerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
chief, prīnceps, prīncipis, *m.*
children, līberī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*; puerī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
choice. *Use the verb* **choose.**
choose, dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum.
Christ, Chrīstus, -ī, *m.*; **before the birth of Christ**, ante Chrīstum nātum. Cf. 182–184.
Cicero, Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*
Cilicia, Cilicia, -ae, *f.*, *a country of Asia Minor.*
Cincinnati, Cincinnātī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
circumstances (under these), quae cum ita sint.
citizen, cīvis, -is, *m. and f.*
citizens (fellow-), Quīrītēs, -ium, *m. pl.*; **my fellow-citizens**, meī cīvēs.
citizenship, cīvitās, -tātis, *f.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
city-, of the city, in the city, *adj.*, urbānus, -a, -um.
civil, cīvīlis, -e; domesticus, -a, -um.
class, genus, generis, *n.*; ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*
clear, clārus, -a, -um; manifēstus, -a, -um.
client (my), *use* hīc.
coast, ōra, -ae, *f.*; **ōra maritima, sea coast.**
cohort, cohors, cohortis, *f.*

colleague, collēga, -ae, *m.*

collect, cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum; colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum; **collect an army**, exercitum comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **collect revenues**, vectīgālia exigō, -ere, exēgī, exāctum.

come, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum.

come forth, prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum.

come on, approach, adeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.

come together, conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.

come (up) to, accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum; perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.

come up, succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.

coming, adventus, -ūs, *m.*

command (*noun*), imperium, -ī, *n.*; iūssus, -ūs, *m.*; iūssum, -ī, *n.*; mandātum, -ī, *n.*; **at the command**, iūssū; **without the command**, iniūssū. Cf. 139.

command (*verb*), imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. Cf. 79–82, 262; iubeō, -ēre, iūssī, iūssum. Cf. 81, 263, 332. mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. Cf. 262.

command (be in), praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus. *With dat. case.* Cf. 83.

command (place *or* put in), praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum. Cf. 84.

commander, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*

commence battle, proelium committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.

commit, committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.

Commius, Commiŭs, -ī, *m.*

common, commūnis, -e.

companion, comes, comitis, *m.*; socius, -ī, *m.*

compare, cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum (collātum).

compel, cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum.

complain, queror, querī, questus sum.

complete, peragō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum; perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.

comrade, socius, -ī, *m.*

conceal, cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. Cf. 70.

concern, cūrae est. Cf. 90–91; pertineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *with* ad *and acc.*

concerning, dē, *prep. with abl. case.*

concerns (it), interest, -esse, -fuit; rēfert, -ferre, -tulit. Cf. 124–125.

condemn, damnō, -āre, -āvī, ātum. Cf. 121.

condition, condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*

conduct (noble), virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*

conduct, manage, administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.

conduct a trial, iūdicium exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

conduct one's self, act, mē gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.

confer, bestow, tribuō, -ere, tribuī, tribūtum; dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum; concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.

confer, talk with, colloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum.

conference, colloquium, -ī, *n.*; concilium, -ī, *n.*

confess, cōnfiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum; fateor, -ērī, fassus sum.

confine, contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.

confusion (throw into), perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

connect, hold together, contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.

conquer, vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum; superō, -āre -āvī, -ātum.

conqueror, victor, -ōris, *m.*

conscious, cōnscius, -a, -um. *With gen. case.* Cf. 113–114.

conscript fathers, patrēs cōnscrīptī, patrum cōnscrīptōrum, *m. pl.*

consent, voluntās, -tātis, *f.*; **without my consent**, mē invītō.

consider, judge, iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum; exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **consider, deliberate**, cōnsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; dēlīberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

consideration (a matter for), cūra, -ae, *f.*

consideration (leave out of), omittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.

Considius, Cōnsidius, -ī, *m.*

conspiracy, coniūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*; **form a conspiracy**, coniūrātiōnem faciō.

conspirator, coniūrātus, -ī, *m.*

conspire, coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

construct, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum; aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

consul, cōnsul, -is, *m.*

consulship, cōnsulātus, -ūs, *m.*; **in the consulship of . . .** Cf. 370, 371.

consult, cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -tum. *With acc.* Cf. 80.

consult the interest of, consult for, cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -tum. *With dat.* Cf. 79–80.

contend, contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum.

contest, certāmen, certāminis, *n.*

contrary to, contrā, *prep. with acc. case.*

contribute, cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum (collātum).

control (*noun*), imperium, -ī, *n.*; iūs, iūris, *n.*; potestās, -tātis, *f.*

control (*verb*), contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum; coerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum.

control (get), potior, -īrī, -ītus sum. Cf. 165–166, 125.

Corinth, Corinthus, -ī, *f.*

Cornelius, Cornēlius, -ī, *m.*

Cotta, Cotta, -ae, *m.*

council, concilium, -ī, *n.*; conventus, -ūs, *m.*

country, *the general term*, terra, -ae, *f.*; **country, land, territory**, fīnēs, -ium, *m. pl.*; **as opposed to the city**, rūs, rūris, *n.* Cf. 194. **native land**, patria, -ae, *f.*

courage, virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*

courageous, fortis, -e.

court, iūdicium, -ī, *n.*

cover, compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum.

Crassus, Crassus, -ī, *m.*

Cretan, Crētēnsis, -e; **a Cretan, a citizen of Crete**, Crētēnsis, -is, *m.*

crime, scelus, sceleris, *n.*; facinus, facinoris, *n.*
criminal, scelerātus, -I, *m.*; facinorōsus, -I, *m.*
crisis, difficile tempus, difficilis temporis, *n.*
cross, trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
crowded together, cōnfertus, -a, -um.
cruel, crūdēlis, -e.
cruelly, crūdēliter.
cruelty, crūdēlitās, -tātis, *f.*
crush, opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum; comprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum.
cry, clāmor, -ōris, *m.*
culture, hūmānitās, -tātis, *f.*
Cumae, Cūmae, -ārum, *f. pl., a city of Italy.*
Cures, Cūrēs, -ium, *f. pl., a town of the Sabines.*
Curio, Cūriō, -ōnis, *m.*
custody, cūstōdia, -ae, *f.*
custom, mōs, mōris, *m.*; cōnsuētūdō, -dinis, *f.*
cut down, concīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum; occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum.
cut off, interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum.

D

daily (*adv.*), cotīdiē; in diēs.
daily (*adj.*), cotīdiānus, -a, -um.
danger, perīculum, -I, *n.*
dangerous, perīculōsus, -a, -um.
dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus sum.
daring (*noun*), audācia, -ae, *f.*
daring (*adj.*), audāx, audācis.
daughter, fīlia, -ae, *f.*
day, diēs, diēī, *m. and f.*
day (each), cotīdiē; in diēs.
day (on the preceding), prīdiē. Cf. 179, 2, 181.
day before (on the), prīdiē. Cf. 179, 2, 181.
day before yesterday (on the), nūdius tertius (*indecl.*).
daybreak, daylight, prīma lūx; **at daybreak**, prīmā lūce.
dead, mortuus, -a, -um.
dear, cārus, -a, -um.
death, mors, mortis, *f.*; caedēs, -is, *f.*
death (punish with), morte multō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
death (put to), interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum. Cf. **kill.**
death penalty, caput, capitis, *n.*
debt, aes aliēnum, aeris aliēnī, *n.*
deceive, fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsum.
decide, cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum; statuō, -ere, statuī, statūtum; iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
decision, iūdicium, -I, *n.*
declare, cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum.
decree (*noun*), cōnsultum, -I, *n.*; dēcrētum, -I, *n.*; **decree of the senate**, senātūs cōnsultum.
decree (*verb*), dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum; cēnseō, -ēre, -uī, cēnsum. Cf. 262.
decree (pass a), dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum.
deed, factum, -I, *n.*
deep, altus, -a, -um.
deeply (how), quam vehementer; quantopere.
defeat, vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum; superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

defend, dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsum; tueor, -ērī, tūtus sum.
defender, dēfēnsor, -ōris, *m.*
defense of (in), prō, *prep. with abl. case.*
degree (in the highest), summus, -a, -um.
delay (*noun*), mora, -ae, *f.*
delay (*verb*), moror, -ārī, -ātus sum; cunctor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
deliberation(s), cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
delight, dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
deliver a speech, ōrātiōnem habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
demand, postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; pōscō, -ere, popōscī, —; flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **demand, make requisition on**, imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. Cf. 80.
deny, negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. Cf. 335.
depart, proficīscor, -ī, profectus sum; discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum; excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum; exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum; abeō, -īre, -iī, -itum; ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum.
departure, profectiō, -ōnis, *f.*; discessus, -ūs, *m.*
deplore, doleō -ēre, -uī, -itum.
deprive, prīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. Cf. 149.
deprived (be), careō, -ēre, —, —; prīvor, -ārī, -ātus. Cf. 149, 153.
depth, altitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
descend, dēscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsum.
deserve, mereor, -ērī, -itus sum; mereō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; **he is worthy to**, dīgnus est quī .... Cf. 275, 1, 569.
deservedly, meritō, *adv.*
deserving, dīgnus, -a, -um.
design, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
desire (*noun*), cupiditās, -tātis, *f.*; studium, -ī, *n.*; voluntās, -tātis, *f.*
desire (*verb*), volō, velle, voluī, —; cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; studeō, -ēre, -uī, —.
desirous, cupidus, -a, -um; appetēns, -entis. Cf. 113–114. **be desirous.** Cf. **desire.**
desist, dēsinō, -ere, -sīvī, -situm; dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, —. Cf. 148, 329.
despair, dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
desperate, perditus, -a, -um; dēspērātus, -a, -um.
despise, contemnō, -ere, -tempsī, -temptum.
despoil, spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. Cf. 149.
destroy, dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum; **of persons**, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum; tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum.
destruction, perniciēs, -ēī, *f.*; exitium, -ī, *n.*; interitus, -ūs, *m.*
deter, dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum. Cf. 269–271.
determine, determine on, cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum.
devastate, vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
devote, cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
die, morior, morī, mortuus sum.
differ, differō, -ferre, distulī, dīlātum.
different, alius, -a, -ud.
difficult, difficilis, -e.
difficulty, difficultās, -tātis, *f.*; **with difficulty**, aegrē, vix.

dignity, dignitās, -tātis, *f.*
diligence, dīligentia, -ae, *f.*
diligent, vigilāns, -antis; dīligēns, -entis.
diligently, dīligenter.
diminish, minuō, -ere, minuī, minūtum. *For the intransitive use* minuō *in the pass.*
direct, praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
direction, pars, partis, *f.*
disagree, dissentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum.
disaster, calamitās, -tātis, *f.*
discover, comperiō, -īre, comperī, -pertum; reperiō, -īre, repperī, -pertum; dēprehendō, -ere, -prehendī, -prehēnsum.
discuss, colloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum; agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.
disembark, (nāvī) ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum.
disgrace, turpitūdō, -dinis, *f.*; dēdecus, -oris, *n.*
disgraceful, turpis, -e.
disgracefully, turpiter.
disgust, taedet, taedēre, taeduit. Cf. 118.
dismiss, dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
disorder, tumultus, -ūs, *m.*
disorder (throw into), perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
dispatch, a letter, litterae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
dispatch, speed, celeritās, -tātis, *f.*
display, ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum.
disposed (ill-), inimīcō animō. Cf. 140.
disposed (well-), bonō animō. Cf. 140.
dispute, contrōversia, -ae, *f.*
disregard, neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.
distance (at a, from a), procul, *adv.*
distance (be at a), distant (be), absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus.
distinction, honor, -ōris, *m.*; beneficium, -ī, *n.*
distinguished, īnsīgnis, -e.
district, regiō, -ōnis, *f.*
disturb, perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
disturbance, tumultus, -ūs, *m.*; mōtus, -ūs, *m.*; dissēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.*
ditch, fossa, -ae, *f.*
Diviciacus, Dīviciācus, -ī, *m.*
Divico, Dīvicō, -ōnis, *m.*
do, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum; agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.
do harm, noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
do not, don't *in prohibitions*, nōlī (*sing.*); nōlīte (*pl.*). Cf. 240–241.
do one's duty, satisfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum.
doubt (*noun*), dubium, -ī, *n.*; **be in doubt**, dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. Cf. 272. **be in great doubt**, māgnopere dubitō.
doubt (*verb*), dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. Cf. 272.
down from, dē, *prep. with abl. case.*
draw a sword, gladium ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum; gladium dēstringō, -ere, -strīnxī, -strictum.
draw up, īnstruō, -ere, -strūī, -strūctum.

dread, metus, -ūs, *m.*
drive, pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum.
drive back, repellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum.
drive forth, drive out, drive from, expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum; ēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.
Dumnorix, Dumnorīx, -īgis, *m.*
during, *expressed by the acc. or the abl. according to* 168–169.
duty, officium, -ī, *n.*; mūnus, mūneris, *n.*; **perform or do one's duty**, satisfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum; officiō fungor, fungī, fūnctus sum.
dwell, habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; incolō, -ere, -coluī, —. Cf. **live**.
dwelling, aedificium, -ī, *n.*
dwelling-place, domicilium, -ī, *n.* sēdēs, -is, *f.*

E

each, quisque, quaeque, quidque. Cf. 53–55. uterque, utraque, utrumque. Cf. 55.
each day, cotīdiē; in diēs.
each one, quisque, quaeque, quidque. Cf. 53–55.
each other. Cf. 26.
eager, cupidus, -a, -um; appetēns, -entis. Cf. 113–114.
eager (be), cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
eagerness, studium, -ī, *n.*
early, mātūrus, -a, -um.
early (in the morning), māne, *adv.*
early manhood, aetās inita, aetātis initae, *f.*
early summer, prīma aestās, prīmae aestātis, *f.*
earth (the), orbis terrae, orbis terrārum. (Orbis, -is, *m.*)
easily, facile.
easy, facilis, -e.
effort, labor, -ōris, *m.*; **studium**, -ī, *n.*
eight, octō, *indecl. numeral.*
eight hundred, octingentī, -ae, -a, *pl.*
eighteenth, duodēvīcēsimus, -a, -um.
eighth, octāvus, -a, -um.
either, aut; vel; **either . . . or**, aut . . . aut; vel . . . vel. Cf. 398–399.
elapse, *passive of* intermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
elate, efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum; **elated**, ēlātus, -a, -um.
elect, creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum. Cf. 58, 67–68.
else, alius, -a, -ud.
embassy, lēgātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
empire, imperium, -ī, *n.*
employ, negōtium dō, dare, dedī, datum; ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum.
enable, make it possible, efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum ut . . . Cf. 264.
encamp, castra pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum.
enclose, inclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum.
encourage, cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
end, fīnis, -is, *m.*
end of, extrēmus, -a, -um. Cf. 108.
endowed, praeditus, -a, -um.
endurable, ferendus, -a, -um.

endure, subeō, -īre, -iī, -itum; perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum; ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.

enemy, public enemy, hostis, -is, *m.*; **personal enemy**, inimīcus, -ī, *m.*

energy, zeal, studium, -ī, *n.*

engage in, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum; **engage in battle**, proelium committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.

engaged (be), versor, -ārī, -ātus sum.

enjoin, sanciō, -īre, sānxī, sānctum. Cf. 262.

enjoy, fruor, fruī, frūctus sum; ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum. Cf. 165.

enjoyment, frūctus, -ūs, *m.*; dēlectātiō, -ōnis, *f.*

enmity, inimīcitia, -ae, *f.*; invidia, -ae, *f.*

enough, satis, *adv. and indecl. noun*. Cf. 104–105.

enroll, of soldiers, cōnscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum; **enroll as a citizen**, ascrībō, -ere, ascrīpsī, ascrīptum; **enroll in the census list**, cēnseō, -ēre, cēnsuī, cēnsum

enter, ineō, -īre, -iī, -itum; intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

enter upon, take up, suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.

entertain an opinion or **sentiment**, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum.

entire, tōtus, -a, -um; ūniversus, -a, -um; cūnctus, -a, -um.

entrust, mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; commendō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum; permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum; attribuō, -ere, -tribuī, -tribūtum; dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.

envoy, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*

equal, pār, paris; aequus, -a, -um. Cf. 92.

equip (a ship), armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

escape, effugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitum; mē ēripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum; vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

escape the notice, lateō, -ēre, -uī, —. *With acc. of the person.*

especially, praesertim; māximē; ante omnēs; potissimum.

establish, cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum.

Etruria, Etrūria, -ae, *f.*, *district of Italy.*

even, *adv.*, etiam; *intensive pron.*, ipse, -a, -um. Cf. 38.

even (not), nē . . . quidem. Cf. 412, 2.

even if, etiamsī; etsī; tametsī. Cf. 322.

even though, etsī; etiamsī, tametsī. Cf. 322.

even up to, ūsque ad *with acc. case.*

evening, vesper, vesperī (or vesperis), *m.*

ever, umquam.

every, all, omnis, -e; quisque, quaeque, quidque. Cf. 53–55.

every day, cotīdiē; in diēs.

every one, omnēs, -ium, *m. and f. pl.*

every year, quotannīs, *adv.*

everything, omnia, -ium, *n. pl.*

evidence, indicium, -ī, *n.*

evil, *adj.*, malus, -a, -um; nefārius, -a, -um; improbus, -a, -um.

evil (*noun*), malum, -ī, *n.* Cf. 3. maleficium, -ī, *n.*

evil deed, facinus, -oris, *n.*; maleficium, -ī, *n.*
excel, antecellō, -ere, —, —; excellō, -ere, (excelluī), excelsum; superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
except, praeter, *prep. with acc. case;* nisi.
exceptional, ēgregius, -a, -um.
exchange, inter nōs damus, etc. Cf. 26.
execute, administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.
exhausted, cōnfectus, -a, -um.
exhort, cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
exile (*verb*), expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum; ēiciō, -ere, ēiēcī, ēiectum.
exile, a man banished, exsul, -is, *m.*
exile, banishment, exsilium, -ī, *n.*
expect, exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
expel, expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum; ēiciō, -ere, ēiēcī, ēiectum. Cf. **drive out.**
experience, ūsus, -ūs, *m.*
experienced, perītus, -a, -um. Cf. 113.
explain, prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum; doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum; expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.
exploits, rēs gestae, rērum gestārum, *f. pl.*
explore, explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
expose, obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.
express an opinion, sententiam ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.
extemporaneously, ex tempore.
extend, pateō, -ēre, -uī, —.
extend thanks, grātiās agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.
extol, tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum.
extraordinary, singulāris, -e; īnsignis, -e.
extremity, extrēma fortūna, extrēmae fortūnae, *f.;* extrēmus cāsus, extrēmī cāsūs, *m.*
eye, oculus, -ī, *m.*

F

face about (*of an army*), signa convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum; *of persons*, mē convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum.
facing, adversus, -a, -um. Cf. 92.
fact, rēs, reī, *f.*
fail, dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum. *With acc.* dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus. *With dat.*
fall, cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum.
fall back, retreat, pedem referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum.
familiar (with), perītus, -a, -um. Cf. 113–114.
famous, praeclārus, -a, -um; **that famous**, ille, -a, -ud. Cf. 34.
far, by far, longē; multō.
farm the taxes, exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
farther (away), amplius; longius. Cf. 159.
farther, *adj.*, ulterior, -ius.
fate, fātum, -ī, *n.*
father, pater, patris, *m.*
favor (*noun*), grātia, -ae, *f.;* **a kindly act**, beneficium, -ī, *n.*
favor (*verb*), faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum. Cf. 79–80.
favor of (in), prō, *prep. with abl. case.*
favorable, aequus, -a, -um; secundus, -a, -um.

fear (*noun*), metus, -ūs, *m.*; timor, -ōris, *m.*

fear, *verb*, timeō, -ēre, uī, —; vereor, -ērī, -itus sum; metuō, -ere, metuī, —. Cf. 266–267.

feel grateful, grātiam habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum. *With dat. case.*

fellow-citizens, Quīrītēs, -ium, *m. pl.*; **my fellow-citizens**, meī cīvēs.

fertility, fertilitās, -tātis, *f.*

few, paucī, -ae, -a, *pl.*

field, ager, agrī, *m.*

field of battle, aciēs, -ēī, *f.*

field of war (in the), mīlitiae. Cf. 196.

fierce, ācer, ācris, ācre; ferus, -a, -um.

fiercely, ācriter.

fifteen, quīndecim, *indecl. numeral.*

fifth, quīntus, -a, -um.

fifty, quīnquāgintā, *indecl. numeral.*

fight (*noun*), pūgna, -ae, *f.*; proelium, -ī, *n.*

fight (*verb*), pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

fight it out, dēcertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

fill, compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum.

finally, tandem; dēmum; postrēmō; ad extrēmum, dēnique.

find, inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum; reperiō, -īre, repperī. repertum.

find out, cōgnōscō, -ere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitum; reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum.

finish, **bring to a finish**, cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum; peragō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum; perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum; fīnem faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.

fire, īgnis, -is, *m.*; incendium, -ī, *n.*

fire brand, fax, facis, *f.*

first, *adj.*, prīmus, -a, -um; *adv.*, prīmum; **at first**, prīmō; **in the first place**, prīmum; prīncipiō; **for the first time**, prīmum; **first part of**, prīmus, -a, -um. Cf. 108.

fit, idōneus, -a, -um; **fit, ready**, parātus, -a, -um.

five, quīnque, *indecl. numeral.*

fix, locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **fix, settle, decide on**, cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum.

fixed, certus, -a, -um.

Flaccus, Flaccus, -ī, *m.*

flee, fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitum.

flee back, refugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitum.

flee (for refuge), cōnfugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitum.

fleet, classis, -is, *f.*

flight, fuga, -ae, *f.*

flight (put to), fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **in fugam dō, dare**, dedī, datum; **in fugam coniciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.

flower, flōs, flōris, *m.*

fluency, cōpia, -ae, *f.*

follow, sequor, sequī, secūtus sum.

follower, socius, -ī, *m.*; **comes**, comitis, *m.*

following, posterus, -a, -um; proximus, -a, -um; **on the following day**, posterō diē; proximō diē; postrīdiē ēius diēī.

follows (as); ita; **he spoke as follows**, haec dīxit. Cf. 65.

folly, āmentia, -ae, *f.*; **the height of folly**, summa āmentia.

fond, cupidus, -a, -um; studiōsus -a, -um. Cf. 113–114.
food, cibus, -ī, *m.*
foolish, stultus, -a, -um.
foot, pēs, pedis, *m.*; **at the foot of**, sub, *prep. with abl.*; **to the foot of**, sub, *prep. with acc.*
foothold (get a), īnsistō, -ere, -stitī, —; **get a firm foothold**, fīrmiter īnsistō.
foot-soldier, pedes, peditis, *m.*
for (*conj.*), nam; enim. Cf. 412, 1.
for (*prep.*), ad, *prep. with acc. case*; *dat. case*; *acc. of extent* (cf. 169, 199); **in behalf of, in defense of**, prō, *prep. with abl. case; with verbs of feeling*, ergā *or* in, *preps. with acc. case.* Cf. 112.
for my part, etc., equidem, *adv., emphasizing the subject.*
for some time, iam diū. Cf. 202, 205.
for the purpose of, for the sake of, causā, *following its genitive.* Cf. 126.
for this reason, quā rē; quam ob rem; quā dē causā.
forbid, vetō, -āre, vetuī, vetitum.
force (*noun*), vīs, (vīs), *f.*; **threats of force**, vīs et minae.
force (*verb*), cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum. Cf. 329, 332.
forced march, māgnum iter, māgnī itineris, *n.*
forces, troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
ford, vadum, -I, *n.*
foreign, exterus, -a, -um.
foreigner, aliēnus, -ī, *m.*
foresight, prūdentia, -ae, *f.*; cōnsilium, -I, *n.*
forest, silva, -ae, *f.*
forever, in perpetuum.
forget, oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum. Cf. 116, 1.
forgetful, oblītus, -a, -um. Cf. 113–114.
form a conspiracy, coniūrātiōnem faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.
former, prīstinus, -a, -um; vetus, veteris; superior, -ius; prior, prius.
former (the) . . . the latter, ille . . . hīc. Cf. 35.
formerly, quondam.
fortieth, quadrāgēsimus, -a, -um.
fortification, mūnītiō, -ōnis, *f.*
fortify, mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
fortunate, fortūnātus, -a, -um; fēlīx, -īcis.
fortune, fortūna, -ae, *f.*; **good fortune, success**, fēlīcitās, -tātis, *f.*; **fortune, property**, rēs, rērum, *f. pl.*; fortūnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
fortune (have the good), contingit, -ere, -tigit. *With dat. of person and a complementary infinitive.*
forty, quadrāgintā, *indecl. numeral.*
forum, forum, -ī, *n.*
forward (go), prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum; prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
foss, fossa, -ae, *f.*
found, condō, -ere, condidī, conditum.
founding of the city, urbs condita, urbis conditae, *f.* Cf. 368.
four, quattuor, *indecl. numeral.*
four hundredth, quadringentēsimus, -a, -um.
fourteenth, quārtus decimus.

fourth, quārtus, -a, -um.
free, līber, lībera, līberum; vacuus, -a, -um. Cf. 149.
free (*verb*), līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. Cf. 149.
freely, līberē.
friend, amīcus, -ī, *m.*; **intimate friend**, familiāris, -is, *m.*
friendly, amīcus, -a, -um. Cf. 92.
friendship, amīcitia, -ae, *f.*
fright (take), pertimēscō, -ere, -timuī, —.
frighten, terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
frighten (thoroughly), perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
from, ā, ab; ē, ex; dē; *abl. case.* Cf. 146–149.
from, *with verbs of hindering*, etc. Cf. 269–271.
from all sides, undique; ab omnibus partibus.
from the vicinity of, ā, ab. Cf. 198.
from which, unde, *adv.*
front, frōns, frontis, *f.*; **in front**, ā fronte.
fugitive, fugiēns, -entis, *m.*
full, plēnus, -a, -um; refertus, -a, -um. Cf. 113–115.
furnish, praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
further, amplius, *adv.*; longius, *adv.*; **of time**, diūtius, *adv.*
furthermore, autem. Cf. 412. praetereā.

G

Gabinian law, lēx Gabīnia, lēgis Gabīniae, *f.*
Gabinius, Gabīnius, -ī, *m.*
gain (*noun*), quaestus, -ūs, *m.*
gain (*verb*), adsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum; cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum; parīō, -ere, peperī, partum.
gain a desire or **a request**, impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
gain possession, potior, -īrī, -ītus sum; occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
Gaius, Gāius, -ī, *m.*
Galba, Galba, -ae, *m.*
galley (war), nāvis longa, nāvis longae, *f.*
Gallic, Gallicus, -a, -um.
garrison, praesidium, -ī, *n.*
gate, porta, -ae, *f.*
gather, bring together, cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum; comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum.
gather, come together, conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.
Gaul, *the country*, Gallia, -ae, *f.*
Gaul, *an inhabitant of Gaul*, Gallus, -ī, *m.*
Gaul (**of** or **in**), **Gauls** (**of** or **with**) Gallicus, -a, -um.
general, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
Geneva, Genāva, -ae, *f.*; **Lake Geneva**, lacus Lemannus, lacūs Lemannī, *m.*
genius, ingenium, -ī, *n.*
German (*noun*), Germānus, -ī, *n.*
German (*adj.*), Germānicus, -a, -um.
Germany, Germānia, -ae, *f.*
get a firm foothold, fīrmiter īnsistō, -ere, -stitī, —.
get back, regain, recuperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
get control, get possession, potior, -īrī, -ītus sum. Cf. 165–166.
give, dō, dare, dedī, datum; **give**

evidence, indicium ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
give over, give up, trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
give warning, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
Glabrio, Glabriō, -ōnis, *m.*
glad, laetus, -a, -um.
glad (be), laetor, -ārī, -ātus sum; gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum.
gladiator, gladiātor, -ōris, *m.*
gladly, libenter; laetē; laetus, -a, -um, *adj.*
glory, glōria, -ae, *f.*; fāma, -ae, *f.*; laus, laudis, *f.*
Gnaeus, Gnaeus, -ī, *m.*
go, eō, īre, iī (īvī), itum.
go away, abeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
go back, redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum; revertor, revertī, revertī *or* reversus sum.
go forth, exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum; ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum; proficīscor, -ī, profectus sum; excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum; discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
go forward, prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum; prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
go on, *passive of* agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum; *passive of* gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.
go out. Cf. **go forth**.
go to, adeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
go to meet, obviam eō; obvius (-a, -um) eō; mē obvium (-am) ferō; occurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursum. *With dat. case.*
god, deus, deī, *m.*
going to, *expressed by the active periphrastic conjugation.*
gold, aurum, -ī, *n.*
gold (of), aureus, -a, -um.
good, bonus, -a, -um.
good fortune, fēlīcitās, -tātis, *f.*; fortūna, -ae, *f.*
good luck, fēlīcitās, -tātis, *f.*
good will, voluntās, -tātis, *f.*; grātia, -ae, *f.*
government, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
governor, prōcōnsul, -is, *m.*
Gracchus, Gracchus, -ī, *m.*
grade, gradus, -ūs, *m.*
grain, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*
grain supply, rēs frūmentāria, reī frūmentāriae, *f.*
grant, dō, dare, dedī, datum; concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum; permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
granted that, ut; *negative*, nē. Cf. 321.
grateful (feel), grātiam habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
gratitude, grātia, -ae, *f.*
Gratius, Grātius, -ī, *m.*
great, māgnus, -a, -um; ingēns, -entis; **very great**, summus, -a, -um; māximus, -a, -um.
great (as), tantus, -a, -um; **as great as**, tantus . . . quantus.
great (how), quantus, -a, -um.
great numbers (in), frequēns, -entis.
great (so), tantus, -a, -um.
greater (the) . . . **the greater**, quantō māior . . . tantō māior; quō māior . . . hōc (eō) māior. Cf. 160–162.
greatest importance (be of), māximī interest. Cf. 122–124.
greatly, vehementer; māgnopere.

greatness, māgnitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
Greece, Graecia, -ae, *f.*
greed, avāritia, -ae, *f.*; cupiditās, -tātis, *f.*
greedy, avidus, -a, -um.
Greek, Graecus, -a, -um.
grieve, doleō, -ēre, -uī, —.
grieve at, doleō, -ēre, -uī, —. Cf. 60.
ground, humus, -ī, *m.*; **on the ground**, humī. Cf. 196.
guard (*noun*), praesidium, -ī, *n.*; **guard, sentinel**, cūstōs, -ōdis, *m.*; **watch**, vigilia, -ae, *f.*
guard (*verb*), tueor, -ērī, tūtus sum; dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsum.
guardianship, praesidium, -ī, *n.*
guidance of (under the). *Use the ablative absolute.* Cf. 370.
guide, dux, ducis, *m.*

H

habit, mōs, mōris, *m.*; cōnsuētūdō, -dinis, *f.*
habit of (be in the), soleō, -ēre, solitus sum; cōnsuēvī. Cf. 209. *Imperfect tense.* Cf. 203.
halt, cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī, —.
hampered, impedītus, -a, -um.
hand, manus, -ūs, *f.*
hand (be at), adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.
hand (on the other), autem. Cf. 412, 1.
hand down, hand over, trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
hang over, impendeō, -ēre, —, —.
happen, it happens, accidit, -ere, accidit, *especially of bad fortune;* contingit, -ere, -tigit, *especially of good fortune;* **fit**, fierī, factum est. Cf. 264.
happen, go on, *passive of* gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum; *passive of* agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.
harass, lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
harbor, portus, -ūs, *m.*
hardship, labor, -ōris, *m.*
harm (*noun*), iniūria, -ae, *f.*; dētrīmentum, -ī, *n.*; **do harm**. Cf. **harm**, *verb.*
harm (*verb*), noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum. Cf. 79–82.
harmony, concordia, -ae, *f.*
hasten, properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum; mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
hate, ōdī, ōsūrus. Cf. 209–210.
be hated, in odiō sum. *With dat. case.*
hatred, invidia, -ae, *f.*; odium, -ī, *n.*
haughty, superbus, -a, -um.
have, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
have influence, possum, posse, potuī, —; valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus. Cf. 66.
have to do with, pertineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum. *With* ad *and acc. case.*
he, is; hīc; ille. *Usually not expressed as subject of a finite verb.* Cf. 16, 20, 33.
head, caput, capitis, *n.*
hear, hear of, audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
height, altitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
heights, superiōra loca, superiōrum locōrum, *n. pl.*
help (*noun*), auxilium, -ī, *n.*;

opera, -ae, *f.*; **by the help of**, per, *prep. with acc.*

help (*verb*), iuvō, -āre, -iūvī, (iūtum); adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, (-iūtum); adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.

Helvetian (*adj.*), Helvēticus, -a, -um.

Helvetian (*noun*), Helvētius, -ī, *m.*

Heraclea, Hēraclīa, -ae, *f.*

Heraclean, *a citizen of Heraclea*, Hēraclīēnsis, -is, *m.*

here, hīc, *adv.*

hereafter, posthāc, *adv.*

heretofore, anteā; adhūc.

hesitate, dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. *With infinitive.* Cf. 328–329, 273.

hiding places, latebrae, -ārum, *f. pl.*

high, altus, -a, -um; **of high birth**, nōbilis, -e.

highest, greatest, summus, -a, -um.

highly, māgnī. Cf. 122.

hill, collis, -is, *m.*

himself, —, suī, *reflexive;* ipse, ipsīus, *intensive.* Cf. 19–25, 38.

hinder, impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum; prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum. Cf. 269–271.

hindrance, impedīmentum, -ī, *n.*

his, suus, -a, -um, *reflexive;* ēius. Cf. 20–25.

hither (*adj.*), citerior, -ius.

hitherto, adhūc.

hold, teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentum; habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; obtineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.

hold a trial, iūdicium agō, -ere, -ēgī, āctum.

hold an opinion, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum.

hold back, retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum; contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.

hold in check, coerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum. Cf. **hold back.**

hold out, sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.

hold out against, resistō, -ere, -stitī, —; sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.

home, domus, -ūs, *f.* Cf. 194–197. tēctum, -ī, *n.;* domicilium, -ī, *n.*

Homer, Homērus, -ī, *m.*

honesty, fidēs, -eī, *f.*

honor (*noun*), **integrity**, fidēs, -eī, *f.;* **honor, respect**, honor, -ōris, *m.*

honor (*verb*), honōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

honorable, honestus, -a, -um.

hope (*noun*), spēs, speī, *f.;* **have hope**, in spem veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum. Cf. **hope**, *verb.*

hope (*verb*), spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

horse, equus, -ī, *m.*

horseback (on), in equō *or* in equīs.

horseman, eques, equitis, *m.*

Hortensius, Hortēnsius, -ī, *m.*

hostage, obses, obsidis, *m.*

hostile, inimīcus, -a, -um; īnfēstus, -a, -um.

hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*

house, domus, -ūs, *f.* Cf. 194–197. tēctum, -ī, *n.;* aedēs, -ium, *f. pl.;* **at the house of**, apud, *prep. with acc.* Cf. French *chez.*

how, quō modō; quā ratiōne; quem ad modum; *with adj. or adv.*, quam.

how great, how large, quantus, -a, -um.

how many, quot, *indecl. noun or adj.*; quam multī, -ae, -a.

how many times, quotiēns, *adv.*

how much, quantus, -a, -um. *As a noun*, quantum, -ī, *n.*

how often, quotiēns, *adv.*

however, tamen; autem. Cf. 412.

however much, quamvīs, *adv.* Cf. 319.

huge, ingēns, -entis.

hundred, centum, *indecl. numeral.*

hundred and sixth, centēsimus sextus.

hundredth, centēsimus, -a, -um.

hunger, famēs, -is, *f.*

hurl, iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum; coniciō, -ere, coniēcī, coniectum; **hurl at any one**, in aliquem iaciō.

hurl away, abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.

hurl back, reiciō, -ere, reiēcī, reiectum.

hurry, accelerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

I

I, ego, meī. *Usually not expressed.* Cf. 16.

I would that, utinam; velim. Cf. 226–231.

Iccius, Iccius, -ī, *m.*

Ides, Īdūs, -uum, *f. pl.* Cf. 177–180.

if, sī; **but if**, sīn. Cf. 299.

if not, nisi; sī nōn. Cf. 299.

if only, dum modo; tantum modo. Cf. 290.

ignorant, īgnārus, -a, -um; imperītus, -a, -um (rērum). Cf. 113–114.

ignorant (be), īgnōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; nesciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.

ill disposed, inimīcō animō. Cf. 140–141.

Illyricum, Īllyricum, -ī, *n.*

image, imāgō, -ginis, *f.*; simulācrum, -ī, *n.*

immediately, statim.

immortal, immortālis, -e.

implore, implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

importance (be of), interest, -esse, -fuit. Cf. 124. **be of little (great, so great) importance**, parvī (māgnī, tantī) est. Cf. 122.

important (so), tantus, -a, -um.

imprison, in cūstōdiam dō, dare, dedī, datum.

imprisonment, cūstōdia, -ae, *f.*; (**chains**), vincula, -ōrum, *n. pl.*

in, in, *prep. with abl. and acc. cases.*

in accordance with, ex *or* dē, *with the abl. case.* Cf. 138–139.

in as much as, quod; cum; quoniam; quia. Cf. 294, 297.

in behalf of, prō, *prep. with abl. case.*

in defense of, prō, *prep. with abl. case.*

in order to, ut. Cf. 253–254.

in return for, prō, *prep. with abl. case.*

in that, quod; *relative clause.* Cf. 293.

in vain, frūstrā, nēquīquam.

inactivity, inertia, -ae, *f.*

incite, sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

inconsistent (be), abhorreō, -ēre, -uī, —. *With* ab *and abl. case.*

increase, make larger, augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum. *Transitive verb.*

increase, grow larger, crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētum. *Intransitive verb.*

indeed, quidem; vērō; sānē; certē; **then indeed**, tum vērō.

infantry, peditātus, -ūs, *m.*; peditēs, -um, *m. pl.*

inflict, īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, inlātum (illātum).

inflict punishment on some one, supplicium dē aliquō sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum; in aliquem animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum; aliquem suppliciō afficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.

influence (*noun*), **political influence**, auctōritās, -tātis, *f.*; **personal influence**, grātia, -ae, *f.*

influence (*verb*), addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum; indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum; moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum; impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum.

influence (have), **be of influence**, possum, posse, potuī, —; valeō, -ēre, -uī, valitūrus. Cf. 66.

inform, certiōrem faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum. Certior *agrees with the object.*

informed (be), certior fīō, fierī, factus sum. Certior *agrees with the subject.*

inhabit, incolō, -ere, -coluī, —.

injure, noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum. Cf. 79–80, 82.

injury, iniūria, -ae, *f.*

inland, interior, -ius.

innocent, innocēns, -entis.

inquire, quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum; rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. Cf. 72.

inquiry (make), quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum. Cf. 72, 65.

inside (*prep.*), intrā, *prep. with acc. case; adv.*, intus.

inspire dread or **fear in any one**, alicuī metum iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.

instruct, praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum; mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

instructions, mandāta, -ōrum, *n. pl.*

integrity, innocentia, -ae, *f.*; fidēs, fideī, *f.*

intend, *expressed by the active periphrastic conjugation.* Cf. 252. in animō habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

intent, intention, animus, -ī, *m.*; cōnsilium, -ī, *m.*; mēns, mentis, *f.*; sententia, -ae, *f.*

interchange, inter nōs damus, etc. Cf. 26.

interest (be to the), interest, -esse, -fuit; rēfert, -ferre, -tulit. Cf. 124.

interests, rēs, rērum, *f. pl.*

interests of any one (look out for the), alicuī cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, cōnsultum. Cf. 79–80.

interval, intervāllum, -ī, *n.*; spatium, -ī, *n.*

into, in, *prep. with acc. case.*

invest, collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

invite, invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum;

send for, arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
island, īnsula, -ae, *f.*
it, is, ea, id. Cf. 36.
it may be that, licet. Cf. 320.
Italian, Ītalicus, -a, -um.
Italy, Ītalia, -ae, *f.*

J

January, Iānuārius, -a, -um, *adj.* Cf. 176.
javelin, pīlum, -ī, *n.*; tēlum, -ī, *n.*
join, coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum. *Transitive verb.*
journey, iter, itineris, *n.*
joy, gaudium, -ī, *n.*; laetitia, -ae, *f.*
judge (*noun*), iūdex, iūdicis, *m.*
judge (*verb*), iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
judgment, iūdicium, -ī, *n.*
Julius, Iūlius, -ī, *m.*
Jupiter, Iuppiter, Iovis, *m.*
juror, iūdex, iūdicis, *m.*
just, aequus, -a, -um; iūstus, -a, -um.
just as, ita ut; sicut.
just as if, velutsī; tamquamsī; acsī; quasi. Cf. 313.
just now, paulō ante; modo.
justice, iūstitia, -ae, *f.*; aequitās, -tātis, *f.*
justly, iūre.

K

Kalends, Kalendae, -ārum, *f. pl.* Cf. 177.
keep, retain, teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentum; retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum; contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.
keep away, keep from, prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum.
keep busy, occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
keep in mind, memoriā teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentum.
keep watch, vigilō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
kill, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum; occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum.
kind, sort, genus, generis, *n.*; modus, -ī, *m.*; **of this kind**, ēius modī. Cf. 102.
kind, kind-hearted, lēnis, -e; mītis, -e; misericors, -cordis.
kindness, an act of kindness, beneficium, -ī, *n.*; **feeling of kindness**, hūmānitās, -tātis, *f.*; lēnitās, -tātis, *f.*
king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*; **of a (the) king, with a (the) king**, rēgius, -a, -um, *adj.*
kingdom, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*
kinsman, propinquus, -ī, *m.*; cōnsanguineus, -ī, *m.*
knight, eques, equitis, *m.*
know, sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum; sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum; cōgnōvī. Cf. 209–210; intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.
know (not), nesciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum; īgnōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
knowledge, scientia, -ae, *f.*
known, nōtus, -a, -um.

L

Labienus, Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*
labor, labor, -ōris, *m.*
lack (*noun*), inopia, -ae, *f.*
lack (*verb*), careō, -ēre, caruī, caritūrus. Cf. 153.

Laeca, Laeca, -ae, *m.*

land, *general term*, terra, -ae, *f.*; **territory**, fīnēs, -ium, *m. pl.*, ager, agrī, *m.*; **native land**, patria, -ae, *f.*; **on land and sea**, terrā marīque. Cf. 189.

language, lingua, -ae, *f.*

large, māgnus, -a, -um; ingēns, -entis.

large (how), quantus, -a, -um.

last, proximus, -a, -um.

last (at), tandem; dēmum; dēnique.

lasting, aeternus, -a, -um; sempiternus, -a, -um; perpetuus, -a, -um.

late in the day, multō diē; **late at night**, multā nocte; **until late at night**, ad multam noctem.

later, posteā; post.

Latin, Latīnus, -a, -um; **in Latin**, Latīnē, *adv.*

Latium, Latium, -ī, *n.*

latter (the), hīc, haec, hōc. Cf. 35.

laugh at, rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsum. Cf. 60.

law, a law, lēx, lēgis, *f.*; **law, justice**, iūs, iūris, *n.*

lay bare, patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum.

lay down (arms), abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.

lay open, patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum.

lay waste, vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; populor, -ārī, -ātus sum.

lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum.

lead across, trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum. Cf. 62–63.

lead back, redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.

lead forth, ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.

lead in, intrōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.

lead on, addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum; indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.

lead out, ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.

leader, dux, ducis, *m.*

leadership, prīncipātus, -ūs, *m.*; **under the leadership of some one**, aliquō duce. Cf. 370, 515.

leading man, prominent man, prīnceps, prīncipis, *m.*

learn, cōgnōscō, -ere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitum; reperiō, -īre, reppertī, repertum; dīscō, dīscere, didicī, —.

learned, doctus, -a, -um.

learning, doctrīna, -ae, *f.*

least powerful (be), have the least power, minimum possum (valeō). Cf. 66.

leave, leave behind, relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum; **leave, go away from, go out of**, exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *with* ex *and the abl.*; discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *with* ex *and abl.*; ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, *with* ex *and abl.*; excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *with* ex *and the abl.*

leave out of consideration, omittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.

left, sinister, -tra, -trum; **on the left wing**, ā sinistrō cornū.

legally, iūre.

legion, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*

length (at), tandem; dēmum; dēnique; postrēmō; **ad extrēmum.**

leniency, lēnitās, -tātis, *f.*; clēmentia, -ae, *f.*

lenient, lēnis, -e; clēmēns, -entis.

Lentulus, Lentulus, -ī, *m.*

Lepidus, Lepidus, -ī, *m.*

less (*adj.*), minor, minus; *as a noun*, minus, minōris, *n.* Cf. 105.

less (*adv.*), minus. Cf. 159.

less (none the), nec minus.

let. Cf. **permit** or **allow.** *In exhortations expressed by the hortatory subjunct.*

let loose upon, immittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *with* in *and the acc. case.*

letter, littera, -ae, *f.*, *a letter of the alphabet;* litterae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, **a letter, a dispatch**; epistula, -ae, *f.*, *a personal letter. on private matters.*

lex Pāpia, lēgis Pāpiae, *f.*, *a law passed in* 65 B.C. *providing that all men not possessing Roman citizenship should be expelled from Rome.*

liberty, lībertās, -tātis, *f.*

lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*

life, vīta, -ae, *f.*

light, lūx, lūcis, *f.*

light (bring to), inlūstrō (illūstrō), -āre, -āvī, -ātum; patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum; dēprehendō, -ere, -prehendī, -prehēnsum.

light armed, expedītus, -a, -um.

like (*adj.*), similis, -e. Cf. 92, 96.

like (*verb*), volō, velle, voluī, —; **I should like**, velim. Cf. 234, b, 230.

likely to, *expressed by the active periphrastic conjugation.* Cf. 252.

likewise, item.

line of battle, aciēs, -ēī, *f.*

line of march, army on the march, āgmen, āgminis, *n.*

Liscus, Liscus, -ī, *m.*

listen to, audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.

literary pursuits, studium litterārum.

literature, litterae, -ārum, *f. pl.*

little (*adj.*), parvus, -a, -um.

little (*adv.*), paulō. Cf. 160–161.

little importance (of), of little value, parvī. Cf. 122.

live, vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctum, **live; dwell**, habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **live, inhabit**, incolō, -ere, -uī, —.

live on, vēscor, vēscī, —. *With abl. case.* Cf. 165.

long, of space, *adj.*, longus, -a, -um.

long, of time (*adv.*), diū.

long time (for a), for a long while, diū, *adv.*

longer (no), nōn diūtius; nōn iam.

look, videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum.

look after, prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum. *With dat. case.*

look at, aspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum; **look at each other**, inter sē aspicere. Cf. 26.

look out for (the interests of some one), prōvideō, -ere, -vīdī, -vīsum; cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, consultum. Cf. 79–80.

lose, āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.

loss, calamitās, -tātis, *f.*; dētrīmentum, -ī, *n.*

love (*noun*), amor, ōris, *m.*
love (*verb*), amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
low, īnferus, -a, -um; **lowest**, īnfimus, -a, -um *or* īmus, -a, -um.
loyalty, voluntās, -tātis, *f.*
Lucullus, Lucullus, -ī, *m.*
luxury, lūxuria, -ae, *f.*

M

mad, āmēns, āmentis; dēmēns, dēmentis.
madness, āmentia, -ae, *f.*; dēmentia, -ae, *f.*
magistracy, magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*
magistrate, magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*
make, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum; efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
make a move, mē commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.
make a promise, polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum.
make a reply, make answer, respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum.
make an attempt, cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
make an attack on some one, in aliquem impetum faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.
make an enemy, inimīcum suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
make an inquiry, quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum.
make war on some one, alicuī bellum īnferō, -ferre, intulī, inlātum (illātum).
make way with, tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum.
man, *the general term*, homō, hominis, *m.*; *with reference to a man of high qualities*, vir, virī, *m.*; **a man who**, is quī. Cf. 36.
manage, administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.
manhood (**early**), aetās inita, aetātis initae, *f.*
Manilian law, lēx Mānīlia, lēgis Mānīliae, *f.*, *a law designed to place Pompey in charge of the Third Mithridatic War.*
Manius, Mānius, -ī, *m.*
Manlius, Mānlius, -ī, *m.*; **of Manlius, Manlian**, Mānliānus, -a, -um.
manner, ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*; modus, -ī, *m.*; ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*
many, multī, -ae, -a; complūrēs, complūra (-ia).
many (**as**), tot; **as many as**, tot . . . quot.
many as possible (**as**), quam plūrimī, -ae, -a.
many (**how**), quot, *indecl. noun and adj.*
march (*noun*), iter, itineris, *n.*; **on the march**, in itinere; **ex itinere.**
march (*verb*), iter faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.
march (**forced**), māgnum iter, māgnī itineris, *n.*
march forward, prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum; prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
March, **the month of March**, Mārtius, -a, -um, *adj.* Cf. 176.
Marcus, Mārcus, -ī, *m.*
maritime, maritimus, -a, -um.
mark out, select, cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum.
Marseilles, Massilia, -ae, *f.*

match, pār, paris. Cf. 92.
matter, affair, rēs, reī, *f.*
may, *expressed by the subjunctive.* Cf. 227, 253, 254.
may, it is permitted, licet, licēre, licuit. Cf. 325, 3.
meantime, meanwhile, interim; intereā.
meet, occurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursum; obviam eō, īre, iī (īvī), itum. *With dat.*
meet (in conflict), congredior, -gredī, -gressus sum. *With* cum *and the abl.*
meeting, concilium, -ī, *n.*; conventus, -ūs, *m.*
memorial, monumentum, -ī, *m.*
memory, memoria, -ae, *f.*; **within the memory of man**, post hominum memoriam.
Menapii, Menapiī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
mention, commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
merchant, mercātor, -ōris, *m.*
mere, ipse, -a, -um.
message, nūntius, -ī, *m.*
messenger, nūntius, -ī, *m.*
Metellus, Metellus, -ī, *m.*
method of attack, oppūgnātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
Mettius, Mettius, -ī, *m.*
middle, midst, medius, -a, -um, *adj.* Cf. 108.
midnight, media nox, mediae noctis, *f.*
might. Cf. **may**.
mild, mītis, -e; lēnis, -e.
mildness, lēnitās, -tātis.
mile, mīlle passūs, mīlle passuum, *m. pl.*; **miles**, mīlia passuum, *n. pl.* Cf. 494, 3.
military, mīlitāris, -e; **military affairs (matters)**, rēs mīlitāris, reī mīlitāris, *f.*; **military tribune**, tribūnus mīlitum.
mind, *of mental qualities*, mēns, mentis, *f.*; *of emotional qualities*, animus, -ī, *m.*
mindful, memor, memoris. Cf. 113–114.
mine, meus, -a, -um.
misdeed, iniūria, -ae, *f.*; maleficium, -ī, *n.*
misfortune, calamitās, -tātis, *f.*
Mississippi, Mississippī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
mistake (make a), be mistaken, errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
Mithridates, Mithridātēs, -is, *m.*
Mithridatic, Mithridāticus, -a, -um.
moderation, modus, -ī, *m.*; temperantia, -ae, *f.*
moment (of such), tantī. Cf. 122.
money, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*
month, mēnsis, -is, *m.*
more (*noun*), plūs, plūris, *n.*, *with partitive gen.* Cf. 105.
more (*adj.*), plūrēs, plūra, *pl. Not used as adj. in the sing.*
more (*adv.*), *of degree*, magis; *of amount*, plūs, *adv.*; amplius, *adv.*
moreover, autem. Cf. 412. praetereā.
Morini, Morinī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
morning (early in the), māne; **this morning**, hodiernō diē māne.
motion, recommendation, sententia, -ae, *f.*
mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*
mournful, trīstis, -e.

move, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum; commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.
move (make a), mē commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.
much (*adj.*), multus, -a, -um.
much (*adv.*), multum; māgnopere; multō.
much as (as or so), tantus . . . quantus.
much (how), quantus, -a, -um.
much (so), tantus, -a, -um.
multitude, multitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
murder (*noun*), caedēs, -is, *f.* **Commit murder.** Cf. **murder**, *verb.*
murder (*verb*), interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum; occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum; trucīdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
Murena, Mūrēna, -ae, *m.*
must, necesse est. Cf. 325, 3. *Expressed by the periphrastic conjugation.* Cf. 383–389.
my, meus, -a, -um.
myself, ego, meī.

N

name (*noun*), nōmen, nōminis, *n.*
name (*verb*), nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. Cf. 58, 67–69.
named, by name, nōmine. Cf. 142–143.
narrow, angustus, -a, -um; **narrow, restricted**, exiguus, -a, -um.
nation, gēns, gentis, *f.*; nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
native land, patria, -ae, *f.*
nature, nātūra, -ae, *f.*; **character**, genus, generis, *n.*
naval, nāvālis, -e.
navigate, nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
near, prope, *adv. and prep. with acc. case.*
nearby, proximus, -a, -um, *adj.*
nearest, proximus, -a, -um; fīnitimus, -a, -um. Cf. 92, 94.
necessary (it is), necesse est. Cf. 325, 3.
necessity, ūtilitās, -tātis, *f.*; necessitās, -tātis, *f.*
need (*noun*), opus, *indecl. noun.* Cf. 155–156.
need (I), mihi opus est, *with abl. of the thing needed.* Cf. 155–156.
needless (it is), nōn necesse est. Cf. 325, 3.
neglect, neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.
neighbor, fīnitimus, -ī, *m.*
neighboring, fīnitimus, -a, -um; vīcīnus, -a, -um.
neither (*adj. and pron.*), neuter, -tra, -trum.
neither (*conj.*), neque (nec); **neither . . . nor**, neque (nec) . . . neque (nec).
Nervii, Nerviī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
never, numquam.
nevertheless, tamen.
new, novus, -a, -um.
next, next to, proximus, -a, -um. Cf. 92, 94. **on the next day**, posterō diē; proximō diē; postrīdiē ēius diēī.
night, nox, noctis, *f.*; **by night**, noctū; **midnight**, media nox, mediae noctis, *f.*
nine, novem, *indecl. numeral.*
ninth, nonus, -a, -um.
no (*adv.*), nōn; *negative answer.* Cf. 225.

no (*adj.*), nūllus, -a, -um. nihil, *with partitive genitive.* Cf. 105.
no longer, nōn iam; nōn diūtius.
no one, nēmō, —, *m. and f.*; nē quis. Cf. 265.
noble, nōbilis, -e.
noble conduct, virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*
none, nūllus, -a, -um.
none the less, nihilō minus; nec minus.
Nones, Nōnae, -ārum, *f. pl.* Cf. 177.
nor, neque (nec). Cf. 394, 399.
not, nōn, nē; *after verbs of fearing*, ut. Cf. 266, 267.
not at all, nihil, *adv.*
not even, nē . . . quidem. Cf. 412, 2.
not know, be ignorant, nesciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum; īgnōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
not only . . . but also, nōn modo (sōlum) . . . sed (vērum) etiam; cum . . . tum. Cf. 399.
not worthy, indīgnus, -a, -um. Cf. 145, 274–275, 569.
not yet, nōndum.
nothing, nihil, *indecl. noun.*
notice, videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum; animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum.
November, November, -bris, -bre. Cf. 176.
Noviodunum, Noviodūnum, -ī, *n.*
now, nunc; iam; **now for a long time**, iam diū; iam dūdum; iam prīdem. Cf. 202, 205.
number, numerus, -ī, *m.*; **a great number**, multitūdō, -dinis, *f.*; **in great numbers**, frequēns, -entis, *adj.*
numerous, multī, -ae, -a; crēber, -bra, -brum.

O

oath, iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, *n.*; **oath-bound pledge**, fidēs et iūs iūrandum.
obey, pāreō, -ēre, -uī, —. Cf. 79–82.
object, rēs, reī, *f.*
observe, cernō, -ere, crēvī, crētum; videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum.
obtain, cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum.
obtain a request, impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
occasion, circumstance, locus, -ī, *m.*; **on many occasions**, saepe, *adv.*
o'clock, hōra. Cf. 175.
October, Octōber, -bris, -bre, *adj.* Cf. 176.
of, *usually expressed by the genitive case*; **of, concerning**, dē, *prep. with abl.*
offer, offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum; prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.
office, magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*
often, saepe.
old, of olden time, of old, vetus, veteris.
omen, ōmen, ōminis, *n.*
on, in, *prep. with acc. and abl. cases.* Cf. also 167. **on, concerning**, dē, *prep. with abl. case.*
on account of, propter, *prep. with acc.*; ob, *prep. with acc.; abl. case.* Cf. 135–136.

on all sides, undique.
on both sides, ab utrōque latere; ab utrāque parte.
on land and sea, terrā marīque. Cf. 189.
on the right (left) wing, ā dextrō (sinistrō) cornū.
on the other hand, autem, *adv.* Cf. 412, 1.
once (at), statim.
one, ūnus, -a, -um; **one . . . another**, alius . . . alius; **the one . . . the other**, alter . . . alter. Cf. 56.
one (no), nēmō, —, *m. and f.*
one at a time, one by one, singulī, -ae, -a, *adj.*
only (*adj.*), sōlus, -a, -um; ūnus, -a, -um.
only (*adv.*), tantum; **not only . . . but also**, nōn modo (sōlum) . . . sed (vērum) etiam; cum . . . tum. Cf. 280, note.
open (*adj.*), apertus, -a, -um.
open (*verb*), aperiō, -īre, aperuī, apertum.
open up, patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum.
opinion, sententia, -ae, *f.*; opīniō, -ōnis, *f.*; animus, -ī, *m.*
opinion (entertain or hold an), sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum.
opportunity, occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.*; facultās, -tātis, *f.*; opportūnitās, -tātis, *f.*
oppose, oppōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum; obstō, -āre, -stitī, —; resistō, -ere, -stitī, —.
opposite, contrārius, -a, -um; adversus, -a, -um. Cf. 92.
oppressive, gravis, -e.
or, aut; vel; sīve; an. Cf. 398–399, 221.
or not, annōn; necne. Cf. 222.
oration, ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*; **deliver an oration**, ōrātiōnem habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
orator, ōrātor, -ōris, *m.*
order (*noun*), **arrangement**, ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*
order (*noun*), **command**, iūssus, -ūs, *m.*; iūssum, -ī, *n.*; imperātum, -ī, *n.*; mandātum, -ī, *n.*
order (*verb*), iubeō, -ēre, iūssī, iūssum; imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. Cf. 79–82, 262–263. mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
order to (in), ut. Cf. 253–254.
Orgetorix, Orgetorīx, -īgis, *m.*
other, alius, -a, -ud; **other of two**, alter, altera, alterum. Cf. 56.
other (the), *of two*, alter, altera, alterum; *of more than two*, reliquus, -a, -um; **the other, the others**, cēterī, -ae, -a; reliquī, -ae, -a.
other's, of another, of others, aliēnus, -a, -um, *adj.*
ought, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; oportet, oportēre, oportuit. Cf. 325, 2. *Expressed by the passive periphrastic conjugation.* Cf. 383.
our, noster, nostra, nostrum.
out of, ex, *prep. with abl. case.*
outcome is (the), ēvenit, ēvenīre, ēvēnit. Cf. 264.
outside, extrā, *prep. with acc. case.*
over, super, *prep. with acc. and abl. cases;* in, *prep. with acc. and abl. cases.*

overcome, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum.
overlook, neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum; praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
overtake, cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum; cōnsector, -ārī, -ātus sum.
overthrow, ēvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum.
overturn, dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.
overwhelm, comprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum.
owe, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
own. Cf. **my**, **your**, **his**, **her**, etc.

P

pace, passus, -ūs, *m.*
pacify, pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
Paphlagonia, Paphlagonia, -ae, *f.*
pardon, īgnōscō, -ere, īgnōvi, īgnōtum. Cf. 79–80.
part, pars, partis, *f.*
participant, socius, -ī, *m.*; particeps, participis, *m.*
pass, *of time*, exigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum.
pass a law, lēgem ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum; lēgem cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum.
pass a decree, dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum.
passage, iter, itineris, *n.*
past years (these), hī annī.
past (in the), anteā; ante id tempus.
patience, patientia, -ae, *f.*
patriotic, amāns patriae; amāns reī pūblicae.
patriotism, amor patriae; amor reī pūblicae.
pay, pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsum; **pay the penalty**, poenās pendō, poenās dō; poenās persolvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtum.
peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
Pedius, Pedius, -ī, *m.*
people (a), gēns, gentis, *f.*; nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*; populus, -ī, *m.*; **the Roman people**, populus Rōmānus; **people, men**, hominēs, -um, *m. pl.*; **the people, the common people**, plēbs, plēbis, *f.*; multitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
people (of the), populāris, -e.
perform, fungor, fungī, fūnctus sum. Cf. 165.
perhaps, forte, fortasse.
peril, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
perish, pereō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
permit, patior, patī, passus sum. Cf. 329. sinō, -ere, sīvī, situm. Cf. 329. permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum. Cf. 262.
persuade, persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum. Cf. 79–82, 262.
phalanx, phalanx, phalangis, *f.*
pirate, praedō, -ōnis, *m.*
pitch camp, castra pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum; castra locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
pity, miseret, miserēre, miseruit. Cf. 118–119. misereor, -ērī, -itus sum. Cf. 120.
Pius, Pius, -ī, *m.*
placate, plācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
place (*noun*), locus, -ī, *m.* (*n. in pl.*); pars, partis, *f.*
place (*verb*), pōnō, -ere, posuī,

positum; locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **place (at intervals)**, dispōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.

place of (in), prō, *prep. with abl. case.*

place (in the second), deinde, *adv.*

place in charge, place in command, praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum. Cf. 83–84.

plague, pestis, -is, *f.*

plain, campus, -ī, *m.;* plānitiēs, -ēī, *f.*

plan (*noun*), cōnsilium, -ī, *n.;* ratiō, -ōnis, *f.;* **adopt a plan**, cōnsilium capiō; cōnsilium ineō.

plan (*verb*), cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; mōlior, -īrī, -ītus sum.

plead a case, causam dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum.

pleasant, iūcundus, -a, -um; grātus, -a, -um. Cf. 113–114.

please, placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum. Cf. 79–82. dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. Cf. 81.

pleasing, grātus, -a, -um; iūcundus, -a, -um. Cf. 92.

pleasure, voluptās, -tātis, *f.;* **it is a very great pleasure**, iūcundissimum est.

pledge (*noun*), fidēs, fideī.

pledge one's word, fidem interpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.

plot (*noun*), īnsidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.;* cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*

plot (*verb*), cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; mōlior, -īrī, -ītus sum.

plunder (*noun*), praeda, -ae, *f.*

plunder (*verb*), dīripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum.

poet, poēta, -ae, *m.*

point (at this), hīc, *adv.*

Pompey, Pompēius, -ī, *m.*

Pomptinus, Pomptīnus, -ī, *m.*

Pontus, Pontus, -ī, *m.*

poor, miser, misera, miserum.

popularity, grātia, -ae, *f.*

popular, of the people, populāris, -e.

populous, celeber, -bris, -bre.

portent, mōnstrum, -ī, *n.*

position, locus, -ī, *m.*

possess, *of concrete objects*, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentum; *of abstract qualities*, in aliquō est aliqua rēs. Cf. also *Dative of the Possessor*, 85–86.

possession, possessiō, -ōnis, *f.*

possession of (be in), possideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum. Cf. **possess.**

possession of (gain or get), potior, -īrī, -ītus sum. Cf. 165–166.

possible (as . . . as), quam, *with the superlative;* **as soon as possible**, quam prīmum.

postpone, cōnferō, -ferre, contulī, conlātum (collātum).

power, military power. imperium, -ī, *n.;* **civil authority**, potestās, -tātis, *f.;* **royal power**, rēgnum, -ī, *n.;* **ability** *in general*, facultās, -tātis, *f.*

power (have), possum, posse, potuī, —; valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus. Cf. 66.

powerful, potēns, -entis.

powerful (be), possum, posse, potuī, —; valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus. Cf. 66.

practice, exercitātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
praetor, praetor, -ōris, *m.*
praetorship, praetūra, -ae, *f.*
praise (*noun*), laus, laudis, *f.*
praise (*verb*), laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
precedent, exemplum, -ī, *n.*
preceding day (on the), prīdiē, *adv.*
prefer, mālō, mālle, māluī, —.
prepare, parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
presence of (in the), *use the abl. abs. of* praesēns. Cf. 370.
present (*verb*), dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. Cf. 78, *a.* dō, dare, dedī, datum.
present (be), adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.
preserve, servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
press hard, premō, -ere, pressī, pressum; urgeō, -ēre, ursī, —.
press on, īnstō, -āre, -stitī, -stātum.
prestige, auctōritās, -tātis, *f.*
prevail, prove stronger, plūs valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus; superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
prevail on some one, ab aliquō impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
prevent, prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum. Cf. 271. impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum. Cf. 269–270. dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum. Cf. 269–270.
principle, lēx, lēgis, *f.*
prison, carcer, carceris, *m.*
private, prīvātus, -a, -um.
privilege, venia, -ae, *f.*; iūs, iūris, *n.*; lībertās, -tātis, *f.*
proceed, prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum; prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum.
product, frūctus, -ūs, *m.*
prominence (of), summus, -a, -um, *adj.*
promise, make a promise, polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum.
proof, indicium, -ī, *n.*
property, bona, -ōrum, *n. pl.*; fortūnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
propose a law, lēgem rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
proposal, sententia, -ae, *f.*
prosecute, persequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum.
protect, dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsum; tueor, -ērī, tūtus sum; mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
protection, praesidium, -ī, *n.*; mūnītiō, -ōnis, *f.*
proof, indicium, -ī, n.
prove, doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum.
provide, decree, sanciō, -īre, sānxī, sānctum. *Of a law.*
provide for, prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum.
provided only, dum modo, tantum modo. Cf. 290.
province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*
provoke, lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
public, pūblicus, -a, -um.
punish, ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum; **punish with death**, morte multō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. Cf. **inflict** and **punishment**.
punishment, poena, -ae, *f.*; supplicium, -ī, *n.*
punishment on some one (inflict), dē aliquō supplicium sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum; in aliquem animadvertō, -ere,

-vertī, -versum; aliquem suppliciō afficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.

purpose, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*; mēns, mentis, *f.*

purpose of (for the), causā *or* gratiā *preceded by the genitive.* Cf. 126. ad, *prep. with acc. case.*

purpose (to no), in vain, frūstrā; nēquīquam.

pursue, sequor, sequī, secūtus sum; subsequor; īnsequor.

pursuit, vocation, studium, -ī, *n.*

put, pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum.

put an end to, fīnem faciō, *with the gen.*

put aside, dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.

put in charge of, put in command of, praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum. Cf. 83–84.

put to death, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.

put to flight, in fugam dō, dare, dedī, datum; in fugam conicio, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum; fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

Q

quaestor, quaestor, -ōris, *m.*

quality (good), virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*

quantity, vīs, (vīs), *f.*

quarters (winter), hīberna, -ōrum, *n. pl.*

question, rēs, reī, *f.*; causa, -ae, *f.*

question of something (be a), dē aliquā rē agitur.

quick, celer, celeris, celere.

quickly, celeriter; **as quickly as possible**, quam celerrimē.

Quintus, Quīntus, -ī, *m.*

R

race, genus, generis, *n.*; gēns, gentis, *f.*; nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*

raise, tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum.

rampart, vāllum, -ī, *n.*

rank, ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*

ransom, redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum.

rashly, temerē.

rather, potius; magis.

reach, arrive at, perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *with* ad *or* in; adveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *with* ad *or* in; **reach** (*a harbor*, etc.), capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.

read, legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum.

ready, parātus, -a, -um.

realize, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum.

really, vērē; rē vērā.

rear (from the or in the), ā tergō; ā novissimō āgmine.

rear of the army, novissimum āgmen; **those in the rear**, novissimī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*

reason, causa, -ae, *f.*; **for this reason**, quā dē causā; quā rē; quam ob rem.

recall, call back, revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

recall, recollect, recordor, -ārī, -ātus sum. Cf. 116, 4.

receipt of this news (on) = **this thing having been announced.** Cf. 369.

receive, accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum; recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.

recently, nūper.

recognize, āgnōscō, -ere, āgnōvī, āgnitum.

records, tabulae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
recount, **mention**, commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
recover one's self, mē recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
reënforcement, subsidium, -ī, *n.*; auxilium, ī, *n.*
refer, referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum; dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
refuse, recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. Cf. 269–270. **say . . . not.** negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. Cf. 335.
regard, aspiciō, -ere, aspexī, aspectum.
regarding, dē, *prep. with abl. case.*
region, regiō, -ōnis, *f.*; loca, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
reign, rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
rejoice, gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum; laetor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
relief, subsidium, -ī, *n.*; auxilium, -ī, *n.*
relieve, levō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
relying on, frētus, -a, -um. Cf. 137.
remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus; remaneō; resistō, -ere, -stitī, —.
remains (it), restat, -stāre, -stitit ut; reliquum est ut. Cf. 264.
remember, meminī, —. Cf. 116. memoriā teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentum.
Remi, Rēmī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
remind, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; admoneō; commonefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum. Cf. 117.
remove, dēmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.
render satisfaction, satisfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum.
renew, redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
repair, reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
repent, paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit. Cf. 118–119.
reply (*noun*), respōnsum, -ī, *n.*; **make a reply**, respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum.
reply (*verb*), respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum. *With dat. case.*
report (*noun*), nūntius, -ī, *m.*
report (*verb*), nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum.
republic, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
repulse, **repel**, repellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum; reiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.
reputation, opīniō, -ōnis, *f.*; fāma, -ae, *f.*
rescue, ēripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum.
residence, domicilium, -ī, *n.*
resign, mē abdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. Cf. 149.
resist, resistō, -ere, -stitī, —.
resolve, cēnseō, -ēre, cēnsuī, cēnsum.
response, respōnsum, -ī, *n.*
rest (**the**), cēterī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*; reliquī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
rest of (**the**), reliquus, -a, -um. Cf. 108. cēterī, -ae, -a, *pl.*
restore, restituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum.
restrain, retineō, -ere, -uī, -tentum; coerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum. Cf 269–270.

result is (the), fit, fierī, factum est. Cf. 264.
retain, teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentum; retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.
retire, retreat, mē recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum; pedem referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum.
return, give back, reddō, -ere, reddidī, redditum.
return, go back, come back, redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum; revertor, revertī, revertī *or* reversus sum.
return, send back, remittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
return for (in), prō, *prep. with abl. case.*
reveal, patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum; inlūstrō (illūstrō), -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
revenue, vectīgal, -ālis, *n.*
revolution, novae rēs, novārum rērum, *f. pl.;* nova imperia, novōrum imperiōrum, *n. pl.*
reward, praemium, -ī, *n.;* frūctus, -ūs, *m.*
Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*
Rhegium, Rhēgium, -ī, *n.*
Rhone, Rhodanus, -ī, *m.*
rich, dīves, dīvitis; locuplēs, locupletis.
right (*adj.*), dexter, dextra, dextrum; **on the right wing**, ā dextrō cornū.
right (*noun*), iūs, iūris, *n.*
rightly, iūre.
rise, surgō, -ere, surrēxī, surrēctum.
risk, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
river, flūmen, flūminis, *n.*
road, via, -ae, *f.;* iter, itineris, *n.*
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um; *as a noun*, Rōmānus, -ī, *m.*
Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*
Romulus, Rōmulus, -ī, *m.*
route, iter, itineris, *m.*
royal, rēgius, -a, -um.
royal power, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*
ruin, ruīna, -ae, *f.*
rule (*noun*), imperium, -ī, *n.*
rule (*verb*), imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. Cf. 79–82. rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum.
rumor, rūmor, -ōris, *m.*
run, currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum.
run forward, prōcurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursum; praecurrō.

S

Sabinus, Sabīnus, -ī, *m.*
Sabis, Sabis, -is, *m., the river Sambre.*
sacred, sānctus, -a, -um.
safe, tūtus, -a, -um; incolumis, -e; salvus, -a, -um.
safely, tūtō.
safety, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*
sail, set sail, (nāvem) solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum; nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
sailor, nauta, -ae, *m.*
sake of (for the), causā *or* gratiā *preceded by its genitive.* Cf. 126.
sally, ēruptiō, -ōnis, *f.*
same, īdem, eadem, idem. Cf. 37, 43.
satisfaction (render), satisfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum.
save, servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; ēripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptum.
say, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum; **say . . . not**, negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

Cf. 335. *With direct quotations,* **I say,** inquam; **he says,** inquit; **they say,** inquiunt. Cf. 412, 3.

scarcely, vix; ferē.

scheme, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*; īnsidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*

Scipio, Scīpiō, -ōnis, *m.*

scoundrel, improbus, -ī, *m.*; scelerātus, -ī, *m.*; **that scoundrel,** iste, istīus. Cf. 32.

scout, explōrātor, -ōris, *m.*

sea, mare, maris, *n.*; **on land and sea,** terrā marīque. Cf. 189.

seacoast, ōra maritima, ōrae maritimae, *f.*

second, alter, altera, alterum; secundus, -a, -um.

secretly, occultō; sēcrētō.

secure, adsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum; nancīscor, -ī, nāctus (nānctus) sum.

Seduni, Sedūnī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*

see, videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum; **catch sight of,** cōnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum.

see to it, prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum.

seek, petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; **seek for,** quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum.

seem, videor, -ērī, vīsus sum.

seems best (it), vidētur, vidērī, vīsum est. Cf. 325, 1.

seize, occupō,- āre, -āvī, -ātum; *of persons,* capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum; comprehendō, -ere, -prehendī, -prehēnsum.

self (*intensive pron.*), ipse, -a -um. Cf. 38. *reflexive pron.* Cf. 19–25.

self-restraint, temperantia, -ae, *f.*; continentia, -ae, *f.*

Sempronian, Semprōnius, -a, -um.

senate, senātus, -ūs, *m.*

senator, senātor, -ōris, *m.*; **senators,** patrēs cōnscrīptī, patrum cōnscrīptōrum, *m. pl., the regular term employed in addressing the senators.*

send, mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum; **send as lieutenant or legate,** lēgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

send ahead, praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.

send away, dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.

send back, remittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.

send for, summon, arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.

send forth, send out, ēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum; ēiciō, -ere, ēiēcī, ēiectum.

send forward, praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.

Senones, Senonēs, -um, *m. pl.*

sentiment, sententia, -ae, *f.*; **entertain a sentiment,** sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum.

separate, dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsum.

Sequanian, Sēquanus, -ī, *m.*

serious, gravis, -e.

Sertorius, Sertōrius, -ī, *m.*; **of or with Sertorius,** Sertōriānus, -a, -um.

serve, serviō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum. Cf. 79–82.

service, beneficium, -ī, *n.*; officium, -ī, *n.*

set (*a day,* etc.), dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum; cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum.

set about, mōlior, -īrī, -ītus sum.

set before, prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum; expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.

set forth, start out, set out, proficīscor, -ī, profectus sum; **set forth, relate**, expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.

set free, līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

set sail, (nāvem) solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum; nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

set up, collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum.

settle, encamp, cōnsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum.

settle, put an end to, cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.

seven, septem, *indecl. numeral.*

seventh, septimus, -a, -um.

seventy, septuāgintā, *indecl. numeral.*

several, complūrēs, -plūra (-ia); multī, -ae, -a; aliquot, *indecl. adj.*

severe, sevērus -a, -um; vehemēns, -entis; ācer, ācris, ācre; gravis, -e.

severity, sevēritās, -tātis, *f.*

sharer, socius, -ī, *m.*; particeps, participis, *m.* Cf. 113–114.

sharp, ācer, ācris, ācre.

sharply, ācriter.

shield, scūtum, -ī, *n.*

ship, nāvis, -is, *f.*; **ship of war**, nāvis longa, *f.*

shore, lītus, lītoris, *n.*; **shore (of the sea)**, ōra, -ae, *f.*

short, brief, *of time*, brevis, -e.

should, oportet, oportēre, oportuit. Cf. 325, 2. dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum. *Expressed by the passive periphrastic.* Cf. 383. *In conditions.* Cf. 309–310, 356.

shoulder, umerus, -ī, *m.*

shout, (*noun*), clāmor, -ōris, *m.*

shout, (*verb*), clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

shouting, clāmor, -ōris, *m.*

show, employ, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum. Cf. 165.

show, teach, doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum; dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; ostendō, -ere, ostendī, ostentum; **display**, ostentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

show gratitude, grātiam referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum.

shudder at, horreō, -ēre, -uī, —. Cf. 60.

shut in, hem in, contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum; inclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum.

shut off, interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum; prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum. Cf. 147–148.

Sicily, Sicilia, -ae, *f.*

side, latus, lateris, *n.*; **on both sides**, ab utrōque latere; **from or on all sides**, undique; omnibus ex partibus

siege, oppūgnātiō, -ōnis, *f.*; obsidiō, -ōnis, *f.*

sight, cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.*; aspectus, -ūs, *m.*

sight of (catch), cōnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum; cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum.

signal, sīgnum -ī, *n.*

Silanus, Sīlānus, -ī, *m.*

silent (be), sileō, -ēre, -uī, —; **keep silent**, taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
Silvanus, Silvānus, -ī, *m.*
silver, argentum, -ī, *n.*
since, cum. Cf. 292. **not long since**, paulō ante; nūper.
single, ūnus, -a, -um.
situated, positus, -a, -um.
six, sex, *indecl. numeral.*
six hundred sixth, sēscentēsimus sextus.
six hundred tenth, sēscentēsimus decimus.
sixteenth, sextus decimus.
sixth, sextus, -a, -um.
sixtieth, sexāgēsimus, -a, -um.
size, māgnitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
skilled, skillful, perītus, -a, -um. Cf. 113–114.
slaughter (*noun*), caedēs, -is, *f.*
slaughter (*verb*), trucīdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum.
slave, servus, -ī, *m.*
slavery, servitūs, -tūtis, *f.*
slay, occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum. Cf. **kill.**
slip away or **from**, ēlābor, -lābī, -lāpsus sum; effugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitum.
small, parvus, -a, -um.
snatch from, ēripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptum.
so, ita; tam; sīc.
so (and), itaque.
so great, tantus, -a, -um.
so many, tot, *indecl. noun and adj.*; tam multī, -ae, -a.
so many times, totiēns, *adv.*
so much, tantus, -a, -um.
soldier, mīles, mīlitis, *m.*
some, aliquis (-quī), -qua, -quid (-quod); quis, qua, quid (quod); nōnnūllī, -ae, a; **some . . . others**, aliī . . . aliī. Cf. 56.
some one, aliquis; quis; quispiam. Cf. 47–48, 50.
something, aliquid, quid. Cf. 47–48.
sometimes, nōnnumquam, *adv.*
son, fīlius, -ī, *m.*
soon, mox; brevī tempore.
soon as (as), cum prīmum; ut prīmum.
soon as possible (as), quam prīmum.
sorrow, dolor, -ōris, *m.*
sort, modus, -ī, *m.*; genus, generis, *n.*; **of this sort**, ēius modī.
Sotiates, Sotiātēs, -um, *m. pl.*
source of revenue, frūctus, -ūs, *m.*
Spain, Hispānia, -ae, *f.*; **of Spain, in Spain, of the Spaniards, with the Spaniards**, Hispāniēnsis, -e, *adj.*
spare, parcō, -ere, pepercī, —. Cf. 79–82.
speak, loquor, loquī, locūtus sum; dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum.
speech, ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*; **deliver a speech**, ōrātiōnem habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
speed, celeritās, -tātis, *f.*; **with horse at full speed**, equō admissō (incitātō).
spend, use up, cōnsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum.
spend, pass, *of time*, exigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum.
spite of the fact that (in), quamquam; cum. Cf. 315, 317.

splendid, pulcherrimus, -a, -um.
sponsor, auctor, -ōris, *m.*
spot, locus, -ī, *m.* (*n. in pl.*).
spring up, orior, -īrī, ortus sum; coörior, -īrī, -ortus sum.
stake (be at), *passive of* agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.
stand around, circumsistō, -ere, -stetī, —.
standard, sīgnum, -ī, *n.;* aquila, -ae, *f.*, (**eagle**).
standard bearer, aquilifer, -ī, *m.;* is quī aquilam fert; sīgnifer, -ī, *m.*
start, set out, proficīscor, -ī, profectus sum.
state (*noun*), cīvitās, -tātis, *f.;* **the Roman state**, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
state (*verb*), dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum; cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
statement, ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
station (*noun*), locus, -ī, *m.* (*n. in pl.*).
station (*verb*), collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
statue, simulācrum, -ī, *n.;* sīgnum, -ī, *n.*
stay, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus; remaneō.
steep, arduus, -a, -um.
still, nevertheless, tamen.
still, up to this time, adhūc, etiam nunc; **up to that time**, etiam tunc.
stir up, agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; concitō.
stone, saxum, -ī, *n.;* lapis, lapidis, *m.*
stop, halt, resistō, -ere, -stitī, —; cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī, —.
store up, condō, -ere, condidī, conditum.
storm (*noun*), tempestās, -tātis, *f.;* hiems, hiemis, *f.*
storm (*verb*), **take by storm**, expūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
storming, oppūgnātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
strategy, dolus, -ī, *m.;* īnsidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
strength, rōbur, rōboris, *m.*
strengthen, cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
strip, spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. Cf. 149.
strong, fīrmus, -a, -um.
strong (be), valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus; possum, posse, potuī, —. Cf. 66.
strongly fortified, mūnītissimus, -a, -um.
study, studium, -ī, *n.*
style, genus, generis, *n.*
Suabians, Suēvī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
subdue, pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
subject (*noun*), rēs, reī, *f.;* **causa**, -ae, *f.*
subject (*verb*), subiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.
subjugate, pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
success, fēlīcitās, -tātis, *f.*
successful, *of things*, secundus, -a, -um; *of persons*, fēlīx, fēlīcis.
successfully, fēlīciter; bene; cum fēlīcitāte.
succession (in), continuus, -a, -um, *adj.*
such, is, ea, id. Cf. 274–275, 569.
such, of such a character, tālis, -e; ēius modī. Cf. 102. **such, so great**, tantus, -a, -um;

such . . . as, tālis . . . quālis; tantus . . . quantus.
such important, tantus, -a, -um.
sudden, subitus, -a, -um; repentīnus, -a, -um.
suddenly, subitō; repente.
sue for, petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
Suessiones, Suessiōnēs, -um, *m. pl.*
suffer, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum; perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum; patior, patī, passus sum.
suffer harm, dētrīmentum capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.
suffer punishment, suppliciō afficior, afficī, affectus sum; poenās dō, dare, dedī, datum; poenās pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsum; poenās persolvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtum.
sufficient, satis, *indecl. noun*. Cf. 105.
sufficiently, satis, *adv.*
Sugambri, Sugambrī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
suitable, suited, aptus, -a, -um; accommodātus, -a, -um. Cf. 92–93.
Sulla, Sulla, -ae, *m.*
summer, aestās, -tātis, *f.*
summon, vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
sun, sōl, sōlis, *m.*
sunset, occāsus sōlis (occāsus, -ūs, *m.*).
suppliant, supplex, -plicis, *m. or f.*
supply, cōpia, -ae, *f.*; **supplies**, commeātus, -ūs, *m., commonly used in the sing.*; **grain supply**, rēs frūmentāria, reī frūmentāriae, *f.*
suppose, crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditum; putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
suppress, opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum; comprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum.
supremacy, imperium, -ī, n.
supreme, summus, -a, -um.
surely, prōfectō; certē; quidem; sānē.
surpass, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; excellō, -ere, —, -celsum. *With dat.*
surrender (*noun*), dēditiō, -ōnis, *f.*
surrender (*verb*), dēdō, -ere, dē, didī, dēditum; trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
surround, come around, circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum. Cf. 62.
surround, place around, circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum. Cf. 78, *a.*
surround, stand around, circumsistō, -ere, -stetī, —. Cf. 62.
survive, supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.
suspicion, suspiciō, -ōnis, *f.*
sustain, sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.
swamp, palūs, palūdis, *f.*
sway, imperium, -ī, *n.*
swiftness, celeritās, -tātis, *f.*
sword, gladius, -ī, *m.*
Syracuse, Syrācūsae, -ārum, *f. pl.*

T

take, *of animate beings*, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum; *of things*, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum; portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **receive**, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum; accipiō.
take away, ēripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptum.

take fright, pertimēscō, -ere, -timuī, —.
take place, *passive of* gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.
take up, suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
take vengeance on, ulcīscor, -ī, ultus sum.
talent, ingenium, -ī, *n.*
Tarentum, Tarentum, -ī, *n.*
task, negōtium, -ī, *n.*; opus, operis, *n.*; rēs, reī, *f.*
tax, stīpendium, -ī, *n.*
teach, doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum; praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum. Cf. 70, 72.
tell, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum; *with dat.*; nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **tell, explain**, expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.
ten, decem, *indecl. numeral.*
Tencteri, Tencterī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
tenth, decimus, -a, -um.
term, verbum, -ī, *n.*; **terms, conditions**, condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*
terrify, terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; perterreō.
territory, fīnēs, -ium, *m. pl.*
testimony, indicium, -ī, *n.*
than, quam. Cf. 157–159.
thank, grātiās agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum. *With dat.*
thankful (be), grātiam habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum. *With dat.*
thanks (render), grātiās agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum. *With dat.*
thanksgiving, supplicātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
that (*pron.*), ille, -a, -ud. Cf. 33. is, ea, is. Cf. 36. **that of yours**, iste, -a, -ud. Cf. 31. **that is**, hōc est.
that (*conj.*), ut. Cf. 254, 257, 262, 264, 265. nē. Cf. 266. quīn. Cf. 272. **would that**, utinam. Cf. 226–231.
that not, nē. Cf. 254, 262, 265. ut nōn. Cf. 259, 264, 265. ut. Cf. 266, 267.
the . . . the, *with comparatives*, quantō . . . tantō; quō . . . hōc (eō). Cf. 162.
their (*reflexive adj.*), suus, -a, -um; *when not reflexive*, eōrum, *or* eārum. Cf. 19–25.
themselves (*intensive pron.*), ipsī, -ae, -a; *reflexive pron.*, —, suī. Cf. 19–25.
then, at the time, tum; tunc; eō tempore; **then**, *resumptive*, igitur. Cf. 412. *In enumerations*, **then, next, in the second place**, deinde.
thence, then, inde.
there, in that place, ibi; **there, to that place, thither**, eō. **There**, *the expletive, is not expressed.*
therefore, itaque; igitur. Cf. 412. quā rē; quam ob rem; quae cum ita sint.
thing, rēs, reī, *f.*
think, putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum; exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
think of, cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
third, tertius, -a, -um.
thirteenth, tertius decimus.
thirty, trigintā, *indecl. numeral.*
this, hīc, haec, hōc; is, ea, id.
thoroughly frighten, perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
though. Cf. **although**.
thousand (a), mīlle, *indecl. nu-*

meral; (more than one) **thousand,** mīlia, -ium, *n. pl. With partitive gen.* Cf. 494, 3.

thousands, mīlia, -ium, *n. pl. With partitive gen.* Cf. 494, 3.

threaten, minor, -ārī, -ātus sum; immineō, -ēre, -uī, —; impendeō, -ēre, —, —. Cf. 79–80.

threats, minae, -ārum, *f. pl.;* **threats of force,** vīs et minae.

three, trēs, tria.

three hundred, trecentī, -ae, -a.

three years, a period of three years, triennium, -ī, *n.*

through, throughout, per, *prep. with acc. case.*

throw, iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum; coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.

throw into confusion, perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

thrust at, appetō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.

thus, ita; sīc.

thwart, obstō, -āre, -stitī, —.

tide, aestus, -ūs, *m.*

till (*verb*), colō, -ere, coluī, cultum.

till, until (*prep.*), (ūsque) ad; in, *prep. with acc. case.*

till, until, *conj.*, dum. Cf. 288.

time, tempus, temporis, *n.;* **at that time,** tum; tunc; eō tempore; **for a long time, for some time,** iam diū; iam dūdum; iam prīdem; **for the first time,** prīmum; **a second time,** iterum; **up to this time,** adhūc, ad id tempus.

times (how many), quotiēns, *adv.*

times (so many), totiēns, *adv.*

timid, timidus, -a, -um.

tire, be tired of, piget, pigēre, piguit. Cf. 118.

Titurius, Titūrius, -ī, *m.*

to, ad *or* **in,** *preps. with acc.; expressed by the dat.*

to, *sign of the infinitive.*

to no purpose, frūstrā, *adv.;* nēquīquam, *adv.*

to-day (*adv.*), hodiē.

to-day (*noun*), hodiernus diēs, *m.*

together. Cf. 26.

together with, ūnā cum *with the abl.*

toil, labor, -ōris, *m.*

too, also, etiam; quoque. Cf. 412.

too, excessively, *adv.*, nimis.

too great, nimius, -a, -um.

too much (*noun*), nimium, -ī, *n.*

too much (*adj.*), nimius, -a, -um.

top of, summus, -a, -um, *adj.* Cf. 108.

toward, *of space,* ad *or* **in,** *prep. with acc. case; of feeling,* ergā *or* **in,** *preps. with acc. case.*

tower, turris, -is, *f.*

town, oppidum, -ī, *n.*

training, exercitātiō, -ōnis, *f.*

transport (*noun*), **freight ship,** nāvis onerāria, *f.*

transport (*verb*), trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. Cf. 62–63.

treachery, īnsidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*

treat, discuss, agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.

tremble at, tremō, -ere, -uī, —. *With acc.* Cf. 60.

trial, court trial, iūdicium, ī, *n.;* **case under trial,** rēs, reī, *f.;* causa, -ae, *f.*

trial, test, perīculum, -ī, *n.*

tribe, gēns, gentis, *f.*

tribune, tribūnus, -ī, *m.*

tributary, vectīgālis, -e; *as a noun,* vectīgālis, -is, *m.*

tribute, tax, vectīgal, -ālis, *n.*
tribute, reward, praemium, -ī, *n.*
triumph (celebrate a), triumphō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; . . . **over some one**, . . . dē aliquō.
troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*; mīlitēs, -um, *m. pl.*
true, vērus, -a, -um.
truly, vērō; certē; sānē; quidem.
trust, cōnfīdō, -ere, cōnfīsus sum. Cf. 79–82.
truth, vērum, -ī, *n.*; vēritās, -tātis, *f.*
try, cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum; temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
Tulingi, Tulingī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
Tullius, Tullius, -ī, *m.*
turn, vertō, -ere, vertī, versum; convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum; **turn, face about**, tergum vertō.
turn aside, āvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum.
twelfth, duodecimus, -a, -um.
twelve, duodecim, *indecl. numeral.*
twenty, vīgintī, *indecl. numeral.*
twenty-three, trēs et vīgintī *or* vīgintī trēs. Trēs *must be declined.* Cf. **three.**
twenty-five, quīnque et vīgintī *or* vīgintī quīnque, *indecl. numeral.*
two, duo, duae, duo; **the other of two**, alter, altera, alterum; **which of two**, uter, utra, utrum. Cf. 45.
tyrant, tyrannus,- ī, *m.*

U

Ubii, Ubiī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
unable (be), nōn possum, posse, potuī, —.
unarmed, inermis, -e.
uncertain, incertus, -a, -um.
under, sub, *prep. with acc. and abl. cases.*
under the leadership of, *use the abl. abs.* Cf. 370.
under these circumstances, quae cum ita sint.
undergo, subeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
understand, intellegō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctum.
undertake, suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
undisturbed, quiētus, -a, -um.
unfavorable, inīquus, -a, -um; aliēnus, -a, -um.
unfortunate, miser, misera, miserum.
unfortunately it happens, accidit accidere, accidit. Cf. 264.
unfriendly, inimīcus, -a, -um. Cf. 92, 95.
unharmed, incolumis, -e; tūtus, -a, -um; salvus, -a, -um; integer, -gra, -grum.
united (be), be in harmony, cōnsentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum; *passive of* coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum.
unjustly, iniūriā, *adv.*
unless, nisi. Cf. 299, 2.
unlike, dissimilis, -e. Cf. 92.
unpopularity, invidia, -ae, *f.*
unprotected, open, exposed, apertus, -a, -um.
unskilled, imperītus, -a, -um. Cf. 113–114.
until (*prep.*) ad *or* in *with acc. case.*
until, (*conj.*), dum; dōnec; quoad. Cf. 288.
unusual, novus, -a, -um; in-

ūsitātus, -a, -um; singulāris, -e; ēgregius, -a, -um.

unwilling (be), nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —.

unwillingly, *use the adj.*, invītus, -a, -um.

unworthy, indīgnus, -a, -um. Cf. 145.

up to, ūsque ad, *prep. with acc. case;* **up to this time**, adhūc; ad id tempus.

upon, in, *prep. with acc. and abl. cases. Time when, abl. case.* Cf. 167.

uprightness, innocentia, -ae, *f.*

urge, hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum. Cf. 262.

use (*noun*), ūsus, -ūs, *m.*

use (*verb*), ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum. Cf. 165.

used to. Cf. **accustomed**.

useful, ūtilis, -e. Cf. 92–93.

Usipetes, Usipetēs, -um, *m. pl.*

utmost, summus, -a, -um.

V

vacant (be), vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

vain (in), frūstrā; nēquīquam.

valley, vāllēs, -is, *f.*

valor, virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*

value (**of great**, etc.). Cf. 122.

value (*verb*), habeō, -ere, -uī, -itum; dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum. Cf. 122.

variety, varietās, -tātis, *f.*

various, dīversus, -a, -um.

Venelli, Venellī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*

Veneti, Venetī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*

vengeance on (**take**), ulcīscor, -ī, ultus sum. *With acc. case.*

Vercingetorix, Vercingetorīx, -īgis, *m.*

verse, versus, -ūs, *m.*

very, *of adj. and adv. use the superlative; intensive pron.*, ipse, -a, -um. Cf. 38.

Vesontio, Vesontiō, -ōnis, *f., a town of Gaul.*

vice, vitium, -ī, *n.*

vicinity of (**in the**), ad, *prep. with acc. case;* **to** or **from the vicinity of**. Cf. 198.

victor, victor, -ōris, *m.*

victorious, victor, -ōris.

victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*

village, vīcus, -ī, *m.*

violence, vīs, (vīs), *f.;* **by violence**, per vim.

voice, vōx, vōcis, *f.*

Volturcius, Volturcius, -ī, *m.*

vote thanks, grātiās agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.

W

wage, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.

wait, exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; moror, -ārī, -ātus sum.

wait for, exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. Cf. 61.

wall, mūrus, -ī, *m.;* **walls of a city**, moenia, -ium, *n. pl.*

want (*noun*), inopia, -ae, *f.*

want (*verb*), volō, velle, voluī, —; cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.

war, bellum, -ī, *n.;* **make war on some one**, bellum alicuī īnferō, -ferre, intulī, inlātum (illātum); bellum alicuī faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum; **in war**, mīlitiae, Cf. 196.

warfare, bellum, -ī, *n.;* rēs mīlitāris, reī mīlitāris, *f.*

warn, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; admoneō. Cf. 117.
warning (give). Cf. **warn**.
waste (lay), vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; populor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
watch (*noun*), vigilia, -ae, *f.; a division of the night.* Cf. 175.
watch, keep watch (*verb*), vigilō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **watch out for**, vigilō ad *with acc. case.*
watchful, vigilāns, -antis, dīligēns, -entis.
watchfulness, prūdentia, -ae, *f.;* dīligentia, -ae, *f.*
water, aqua, -ae, *f.*
wave, flūctus, -ūs, *m.*
way (in this, such, etc.), ita; sīc.
way, manner, modus, -ī, *m.;* ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*
way, road, via, -ae, *f.;* iter, itineris, *n.*
way with (make), tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum. Cf. **kill.**
weaken, dēbilitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
weapon, tēlum, -ī, *n.*
weather, tempestās, -tātis, *f.;* hiems, hiemis, *f.*
weep, fleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum.
weight, onus, oneris, *n.;* pondus, ponderis, *n.*
weight (have), valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus.
welcome, accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
welfare, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*
well, bene.
well disposed, bonō animō. Cf. 140.
well known, nōtus, -a, -um.
what (*adj.*), quī, quae, quod; *pron.*, quid.
what sort of, quālis, -e.
whatever, whatsoever, *pron.*, quicquid; *adj.*, quīcumque, quae-, quod-.
when, cum. Cf. 277–282. **ubi.** Cf. 283.
whence, unde.
whenever, cum. Cf. 282.
where, in what place, ubi; **where, to what place**, quō.
whether, *in single questions*, num; -ne; *in double questions*, utrum; -ne. Cf. 221. **whether . . . or**, utrum (-ne) . . . an. Cf. 221. **whether . . . or not**, utrum . . . annōn; utrum . . . necne. Cf. 222. **whether, to see if**, sī. Cf. 251.
which (*relative pron. and adj.*), quī, quae, quod.
which (*interrogative pron.*), quis, quid; *interrogative adj.*, quī (quis), quae, quod; **which of two**, uter, utra, utrum, *interrogative pron. and adj.* Cf. 45.
while, dum. Cf. 285–287.
while, on the other hand, autem. Cf. 412.
while (for a long), diū.
while (it is worth), tantī est. Cf. 122. operae pretium est.
whither, quō.
who (*relative pron.*), quī, quae; *interrogative pron.*, quis.
whole, tōtus, -a, -um; ūniversus, -a, -um; cūnctus, -a, -um; **as a whole**, ūniversus, -a, -um.
why, cūr; quid; quā rē; quam ob rem.
wicked, improbus, -a, -um; scele-

rātus, -a, -um; malus -a, -um; nefārius, -a, -um.

wide, lātus, -a, -um.

widely, lātē.

width, lātitūdō, -dinis, *f.*; amplitūdō, -dinis, *f.*

wife, uxor, -ōris, *f.*; cōniūnx, cōniugis, *f.*

will (against one's), *use* invītus, -a, -um, *adj.* Cf. 370.

will, be willing, volō, velle, voluī, —.

will (good), voluntās, -tātis, *f.*

win over, conciliate, plācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

wind, ventus, -ī, *m.*

wine, vīnum, -ī, *n.*

wing (of an army), cornū, -ūs, *n.*; **on the right (left) wing**, ā dextrō (sinistrō) cornū.

winter (*noun*), hiems, hiemis, *f.*

winter (*verb*), hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

winter quarters, hīberna, -ōrum, *n. pl.*

wisdom, sapientia, -ae, *f.*; cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*; prūdentia, -ae, *f.*

wise, sapiēns, -entis; **a wise man**, sapiēns, -entis, *m.*

wish, volō, velle, voluī, —; cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; **not wish**, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —.

with, cum, *prep. with abl.*; apud, *prep. with acc.*; *abl. of means.* Cf. 127. **along with, together with**, ūnā cum, *with abl.*

withdraw, discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum; excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum; mē recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.

within, *of place*, intrā, *prep. with acc. case*; **within**, *of time*, *abl. of time.* Cf. 167–168.

without, sine, *prep. with abl. case*; *with clauses*, ut . . . nōn. Cf. 259, *a.*

withstand, sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.

witness, testis, -is, *m. and f.*

woman, mulier, mulieris, *f.*

wonder, wonder at, mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum. Cf. 60.

wonderful, mīrābilis, -e.

woods, silva, -ae, *f.*

word, verbum, -ī, *n.*

word of honor, fidēs, -eī, *f.*

world, orbis terrae *or* orbis terrārum (orbis, -is, *m.*, **circle**).

worth while (it is), tantī est; operae pretium est. Cf. 122.

worthy, dīgnus, -a, -um. Cf. 145, 275, 1.

would that, utinam. Cf. 226–231.

wound (*noun*), vulnus, vulneris, *n.*

wound (*verb*), vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

write, scrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, scrīptum.

wrong, iniūria, -ae, *f.*

wrong (be), be mistaken, errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

wrongdoer, nocēns, -entis, *m.*

wrongdoing, maleficium, -ī, *n.*

Y

year, annus, -ī, *m.*; **every year, yearly**, quotannīs, *adv.*

yes. Cf. 223–224.

yet, nevertheless, tamen; autem. Cf. 412, 1.

yet, up to this time, adhūc; etiam

nunc; **up to that time**, etiam tunc.
yet (not), nōndum.
yield, cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum. Cf. 79–82.
you, tū, tuī; vōs, vestrum (vestrī).
young man, adulēscēns, -entis, *m.*; iuvenis, -is, *m.*
your, *of one person*, tuus, -a, -um; *of more than one person*, vester, vestra, vestrum.

Z

zeal, studium, -ī, *n.*
zealous, studiōsus, -a, -um.

INDEX

(The numbers refer to sections.)

A

Ablative absolute, 369–374.
Ablative case, 127–168, 463.
absolute, 369–374.
of accompaniment, 133–134, 463.
of accordance, 138–139, 463.
of agent, 128–130, 463.
of cause, 135–137, 463.
of comparison, 157–159.
of degree of difference, 160–162, 174, 200.
of description, 140–141.
of manner, 131–132, 463.
of material, 152.
of means or instrument, 127, 129, 463.
of measure or difference, 160–162, 174, 200.
of origin, 150–151.
of place whence, 188, 192–194.
of place where, 186, 189.
of price, 163–164.
of respect, 142–145.
of separation, 146–149.
of source, 150–151.
of specification, 142–145, 463.
of time, 167–168, 170.
with *dīgnus* and *indīgnus*, 145.
with *opus* and *ūsus*, 155–156.
with *ūtor*, etc., 165–166.
with verbs of plenty, etc., 153–154.
Abstaining, verbs of, 147–148.
abstineō, 147–148.
absum, construction, 200.
accēdit ut, 264.
accidit ut, 264.
accommodātus, 92–93.
Accompaniment, ablative of, 133–134, 463.
Accordance, ablative of, 138–139, 463.
Accusative case, 60–77.
cognate accusative, 64.
direct object, 60–61.
exclamations, 77.
extent of time and space, 169, 199–200, 452; of degree, 74.
inner object, 65–66.
limit of motion, place to which, 187, 190, 194, 195, 198.
subject of infinitive, 324–325, 333 ff.
with compounds of *trāns*, etc., 62–63.
with verbs of asking, etc., 70–72.
with verbs of naming, etc., 67–68.
Accusing, verbs of, 121.
accūsō, 121.

Acquitting, verbs of, 121.
acsī, 313.
ad-, compounds of, with acc., 62; with dat., 83.
additur ut, 264.
Adjectives, agreement, 1–3; attributive, 1, *a*; predicate, 1, *b*; 430.
as substantives, 3.
indefinite, 46–56.
reflexive, 19–25.
position of, 402, 407.
possessive, 27–29.
with dat., 92–96.
with gen., 113–115.
adiuvō, 81.
admoneō, 117; **admoneō ut**, 262.
Adverbial acc., 74.
Adverbs, position of, 411.
Adversative conjunctions, 397.
adversus, 92.
aequus, 92.
aestimō, 122.
Agent, ablative of, 89, 128–130, 388; dative of, 88–89, 384, 388.
Agreement of adjectives, 1–3.
of nouns, 4–7.
of relative pronoun, 12–15.
of verbs, 8–11.
aliquis, 46–48.
alius, 56, 494, 4.
alter, 56, 494, 4.
amīcus, 92, 95.
amplius, 159.
an in questions, 221–222, 398–399.
annōn, 222.
Answers, 223–225.
ante-, in compounds, with dat., 83.
antequam, 289.
Apodosis, 298.
of unreal conditions with indicative, 309–310.
appellō, 58, 67–68.
Appointing, verbs of, 67–68.
Apposition, 4–6.
Appositives, 4–6; position of, 408.
aptus, 92–93.
Asking, verbs of, 70–72.
attingit ut, 264.
attribuō with gerundive, 382.
audeō, 329.
autem, postpositive, 412.
avidus, 113–114.

B

Believing, verbs of, 79–82.
bellī, loc., 196.

C

Cardinal numerals, position of, 406.
cārus, 92.
Cases. Cf. **Ablative**, etc.
cāsū, 132.
causā, 126, 381.
Causal clauses, 291–297.
Cause, ablative of, 135–137, 463.
cēdō, 79–82.
cēlō, 70.
cēnseō, 262.
Characteristic clauses, 274–276, 569.
circum, in compounds, with acc., 62; with dat., 83.
Cities, construction with names of, 193–194, 198.
coepī, 329.
Cognate accusative, 64.
cōgnōvī, 209–210.
cōgō, 332, 329.

Collective nouns, verb agreement, 9.
Commanding, verbs of, 79–82.
Commands, 237–241; in indirect discourse, 349.
commonefaciō, **commonefīō**, 117.
commoneō, 117.
Comparison, ablative of, 157–159.
Comparison, conditional clauses of, 313.
Complementary infinitive, 328–330; position of, 419.
Complex sentences in indirect discourse, 346–358.
Complex sentences, order of words in, 420–425.
Compound sentences, order of words in, 420–425.
Compound verbs, with acc., 62–63; with dat., 83–84, 475.
con, in compounds, 83.
concēdō, 382.
Concessive clauses, 314–322; position of, 422.
Condemning, verbs of, 121.
Conditional clauses of comparison, 313.
Conditions, 298–312.
logical, 301.
ideal, 303.
unreal, 305–310.
mixed, 308.
in indirect discourse, 351–358.
expressed by participle, 312, 371.
cōnferō, 475.
cōnfīdō, 79–82.
Conjunctions, 394–399.
conlocō, 191.
cōnor, 329, 471.
cōnscius, 113–114.
cōnsequitur ut, 264.
cōnsiliō, 139.
cōnstituō, 191, 329.
cōnsuēscō, 329.
cōnsuētūdine, 139.
cōnsuēvī, 209–210.
cōnsulō, 79–82, footnote, p. 15.
contendō, 329.
contentus, 137.
contineō, 475.
contingit ut, 264.
contrārius, 92.
Contrary to fact conditions. Cf. **Unreal.**
conveniō, 475.
Convicting, verbs of, 121.
convocō, 475.
Copulative conjunctions, 394–396
Correlative conjunctions, 399.
crēdō, 79–82.
creō, 57–58, 67–69.
cum, causal, 292.
concessive, 315.
temporal, 277–282.
inversum, 281.
iterative, 282.
cum . . . tum, 280, note.
tum, cum, 280.
cunctor, 329.
cūnctus, 189.
cupidus, 113–114.
cupiō, 332, 262, 329.
cūrō, 382; **cūrō ut**, 262.

D

Dates, 176–185.
Dative case, 78–96.
of agent, 88–89, 384, 388.
of indirect object, 78.
of interest, 87.
of possessor, 85–86.

Dative case, of purpose, 90–91, 483.
of reference, 87.
of service, 90–91.
with adjectives, 92–96.
with compound verbs, 83–84.
with special verbs, 79–82.
Day, divisions of the, 175.
dēbeō, 329, 585; in unreal conditions, 309–310.
dēcernō, 262.
Definite value or cost, 123.
Degree of difference, ablative of, 160–162, 200.
dēlectō, 81.
Deliberative subjunctive, 218.
dēligō, 58, 67.
Demanding, verbs of, 70–72.
Demonstrative pronouns and **adjectives**, 30–38; position of, 403.
Deponent verbs, participles of, 361; periphrastic of, 519.
Description, genitive of, 101–103, 109; ablative of, 140–141.
dēsinō, 329, 147–148.
Desire, adjectives of, 113–114.
dēsistō, 329, 147–148.
dēspērō, 60.
dēterreō, 269–270.
dextrā, 189.
dīcō, 58, 67–68, 329.
dictū, 391.
Difference, Degree or Measure of, 160–162.
diffīdō, 79–82.
dignus, 145; *dignus est quī*, 275.
Direct discourse, 467.
Direct object, 60–63.
Direct questions, 214–222.
Direct and **indirect reflexives**, 21–25.
Disjunctive conjunctions, 398.
dissimilis, 92.
Distance, how expressed, 200.
dīstō, 200.
dō, with gerundive, 382.
doceō, 70–72.
doleō, with acc., 60; with *quod*, 296; with infinitive, 336.
dolō, 132.
domus, 194.
dōnec, 288.
Double dative, 91.
Double questions, 221–222.
Doubting, verbs of, 272–273.
dūcō, 122.
Dubitative subjunctive, 218.
dubitō, 272–273, 329.
dum, *while*, 285–287; *until*, 288; in proviso, 290.
Duration of time, 169, 452.

E

efficiō, 264.
egeō, 154.
ēgredior, 147–148.
ēius modī, 275, 4.
Emotion, verbs of, *miseret*, etc., 118–120; with indirect discourse, 336.
Emphasis, 401.
Enclitics, 413.
enim, postpositive, 412.
Entreaty, 236; in indirect discourse, 349.
Envy, verbs of, 79–82.
eō, degree of difference, 161.
ergā, 112.
et, 394–396.
etiamsī, 322.
etsī, 322.
excēdō, 147–148.

Exceptional sequence, 247–250.
Exclamations, 77.
expellō, 147–148.
expers, 113–114.
exspectō, 61.
Extent, of degree, 74; of space, 199–200; of time, 169.
extrēmus, 108.

F

faciō, with double acc., 67–69; with gen., 122.
faciō ut, 264.
factū, 391.
faveō, 79–82.
Favor, verbs of, 79–82.
Fearing, verbs of, 266–268.
ferē, position of, 411.
fīdō, 79–82.
Final clauses. Cf. **Purpose**.
fīnitimus, 92, 95.
flō, 58.
fit ut, 264.
fitness, adjectives of, 92–95.
fore ut, 341–342.
Forgetting, verbs of, 116.
forīs, 196.
frētus, 137.
Friendliness, adjectives of, 92–95.
fruor, 165.
Fullness, adjectives of, 113–114.
fungor, 165.
Future tense, indicative, 212; infinitive, 340–343; participle, 365.
Future perfect, 213; when changed into subjunctive, 250.
futūrum esse ut, 341–342.
futūrum fuisse ut, 354, 3.

G

gaudeō, 336.
Gender. Cf. **Agreement**.
Genitive case, 97–126.
description, 101–103.
indefinite value, 122–123.
objective, with nouns, 110–112; with adjectives, 113–115.
partitive, 104–108.
possession, 97–100.
predicate, 109.
quality, 101–103.
with *interest*, 124.
with *potior*, 125.
with *similis*, etc., 95–96.
with verbs of accusing, etc., 121.
with verbs of emotion, 118–120.
with verbs of memory, etc., 116.
with verbs of reminding, etc., 117.
with verbs of rating, 122–123.
position of, 409.
Gerund, 376, 378–379, 381, 501.
Gerundive, 377–382, 501.
grātus, 92.

H

habeō, with pred. noun, 58; with double acc., 67–69; with gen., 122.
Helping, verbs of, 79–82.
hīc, haec, hōc, 30, 35.
Hindering, verbs of, 269–271.
Historical perfect, 207.
Historical tenses, 242.
hōc, abl. of degree of difference, 161.
Hoping, verbs of, 334.
horreō, 60.

Hortatory subjunctive, 236, 241; in indirect discourse, 349; in conditions, 311.
hortātū, 139.
hortor, 262.
humī, 196.

I

iam diū, etc., 202, 205.
Ideal conditions, 303–304; in indirect discourse, 353.
Idem, 37.
Ides, 177.
idōneus, 92; *idōneus est quī*, 275.
igitur, 412.
Ignōscō, 79–82.
ille, 33–35.
immemor, 113–114.
impediō, 269–270.
Imperative, 237–241; in indirect discourse, 349; in conditions, 311.
Imperfect tense, indicative, 203–205.
subjunctive, 245.
in wishes, 228.
in conditions, 306.
sequence after, 249.
imperītus, 113–114.
Impersonal construction with verbs of saying, 344–345.
Impersonal use of verbs taking the dative, 82.
Impersonal verbs, *miseret*, etc., 118–119.
imperō, with dat., 79–82; *imperō ut*, 262.
Implied indirect discourse, 295–296.
importō, 475.
īmus, 108.
in-, in compounds, with dat., 83; with acc., 62.
incipiō, 329.
Indefinite pronouns and adjectives, 47–56.
Indefinite value, genitive of, 122–123.
indigeō, 154.
indīgnus, 145; *indīgnus est*, 275, 1.
Indirect discourse, 333–358, 467.
commands in, 349.
complex sentences in, 346–358.
conditions in, 351–358.
declarative sentences in, 333–347.
entreaty in, 349.
tenses of infinitive in, 337–343.
implied or partial, 295–296.
Indirect object, 78–84.
Indirect questions, 251–252; double, 222; position of, 423.
Indirect reflexive, 21–25, 487, 541.
indulgeō, 79–82.
Indulging, verbs of, 79–82.
Inferō, 475.
Infēstus, 92.
Infimus, 108.
Infinitives, 323–345.
complementary, 329–330.
in indirect discourse, 333–336.
modified by gen. or adj., 100.
objective, 331–332.
personal and impersonal constructions, 344–345.
subjective, 323–327.
tenses, 337–343, 467.
inimīcus, 92, 95.
inīquus, 92.
iniūria, 132.
iniussū, 139.
Inner object, 65–66, 117, 471.

inops, 113–114.
inter-, in compounds, 83.
interclūdō, 147–148.
Interest, dative of, 87, 91.
interest, 124.
interficiō, 475.
Interrogative pronouns, and adjectives, 44–45; position of, 415.
inūtilis, 92–93.
invideō, 79–82.
ipse, 38, 25.
īrāscor, 79–82.
is, ea, id, 36, 20, 459.
iste, 31–32.
iubeō, 332, 263, 81.
iūre, 132.
iūs est ut, 264.
iussū, 139.
iuvō, 81.

J

Jussive subjunctive, 236, 241.

K

Kalends, 177.
Knowing, verbs of, 333.
Knowledge, adjectives of, 113–114.

L

laetor, with *quod*, 296; with infinitive, 336.
laetus, 137.
laevā (parte), 189.
lēge, lēgibus, 132.
Less vivid conditions. Cf. **Ideal conditions.**
līber, 149.
līberō, 149.
licet, *may*, 325, 3, 326; in unreal conditions, 309–310.
licet, *although*, 320.
Likeness, adjectives of, 92–96.
Limit of motion, 75, 187, 190, 194, 195, 198.
Locative case, 193–198.
locō, locīs, 189.
locō, verb, with *in* and abl., 191; with gerundive, 382.
Logical conditions, 301–302; in indirect discourse, 352.
longius, 159.
lūgeō, with acc., 60; with infinitive, 336.

M

maereō, 60.
Making, verbs of, 67–68.
mālim, māllem, 231.
mālō, 329, 332.
mandō, 262.
maneō, 58.
Manner, ablative of, 131, 463.
Material, ablative of, 152.
mātūrō, 329.
Means or **instrument**, ablative of, 127, 129, 463.
Measure, genitive of, 102.
Measure of difference, 160, 162, 200.
medius, 108.
mementō, 239.
meminī, 209–210, 116.
memor, 113–114.
Memory, adjectives of, 113–114; verbs of, 116.
meritō, 132.
metuō, 266–268, 329.
mīlitiae, 196.
mīlle, mīlia, 494, 3.
minitor, 79–82.
minor, verb, 79–82.

minus, adverb, 159.
mīror, with acc., 60; with infinitive, 336.
misereor, 120.
miseret, 118–119.
miseror, 120.
Mixed conditions, 308, 311.
moneō, 262, 471.
Months, 176–181.
mōre, mōribus, 139.
More vivid conditions, 301–302; in indirect discourse, 352.
moror, 329.
mōs est ut, 264.
moveō, 147–148.
multō, 161.
Must, 585.

N

Naming, verbs of, 58, 67.
nātū, 143.
nātus, 150.
nē, in purpose clauses, 254, 265, 262, 479; after verbs of fearing, 266–267; after verbs of preventing, etc., 269–271; in hortatory subjunctive, 236, 241; in wishes, 226; in concessive clauses, 321.
nē . . . quidem, 412.
-ne, enclitic, 217, 221–222, 413.
Nearness, adjectives of, 92–95.
necesse est, 325, 3, 326, 585; in unreal conditions, 309–310.
Necessity, verbs of, 309–310.
necne, 222.
Negatives, 265, 479.
negō, 335.
negōtium dō ut, 262.
nesciō, 329.
Night, divisions of, 175.
nisi, 299, 2.
noceō, 79–82.
nōlī, nōlīte, 240–241.
nōlō, 329, 332.
Nominative case, 57–58.
nōmine, 143.
nōminō, 67–68, 58.
Nones, 177.
nōnne, 215.
nostrī and **nostrum**, 17.
nōvī, 209–210.
nūdō, 149.
nūdus, 149.
num, 216.
Number. Cf. **Agreement**.
Numerals, position of, 406.
numerō, 143.

O

ob-, in compounds, 83.
Obeying, verbs of, 79–82.
Object, direct, 60–63.
indirect, 78–84.
inner, 65–66, 471.
Objective genitive, 110–112.
Objective infinitive, 331.
Obligation, in unreal conditions, 309–310, 356.
oblīvīscor, 116.
oblītus, 113–114.
obstō, 269–270.
obtineō, 475.
occupō, 475.
ōdī, 209–210.
omnis, 189.
oportet, 309–310, 325, 2, 326, 585.
opprimō, 475.
optō, 262.
opus est, 155–156.

Order of words, 400–424.
Ordinal numerals, position of, 406.
ōrdine, 132.
Origin, ablative of, 150.
ōrō, 70–72; *ōrō ut*, 262.
ortus, 150.
Ought, 585.

P

paene, 411.
paenitet, 118–119.
pār, 92, 95.
parcō, 79–82.
Pardoning, verbs of, 79–82.
pāreō, 79–82.
parō, with acc., 61; with infinitive, 329.
parte, partibus, 189.
particeps, 113–114.
Participles, 359–375, 511.
as adjectives, 366.
as nouns, 367.
for clauses, 375.
in ablative absolute, 369–374.
in conditions, 312.
in *-ns*, with gen., 113.
Particles introducing purpose and result clauses, contrasted, 265.
Partitive genitive, 104–108.
Passive periphrastic conjugation, 383–389; in conditions, 309–310.
passus, 494.
patior, 329, 332.
paulō, 161.
per-, in compounds, 62.
per, *through the agency of*, 130.
Perceiving, verbs of, 333.
Perfect tense, indicative, 206–209.
subjunctive, 244; sequence of, 248; in result clauses, 260.
infinitive, 339; sequence after, 248.
participle, 364.
perficiō, 264.
Periphrastic conjunctions.
active in indirect questions, 252; in conditions, 309–310.
passive, 383–389, 519; in conditions, 309–310.
perītus, 113–114.
permittō, 262.
Person, of verb, 8, 11.
Personal and impersonal constructions with verbs of saying, 344–345.
Personal pronouns, 16–20.
persuādeō, with dat., 79–82; with subjunctive, 262.
Persuading, verbs of, 79–82.
pertaesum est, 118–119.
petō, with *ā* and abl., 70–72; with subjunctive, 262.
piget, 118–119.
Place, constructions of, 186–200.
from which, 188, 192, 194, 198.
to which, 187, 190, 191, 194, 198.
where, 186, 189, 193–197.
placeō, 79–82.
placet, 325, 1, 326.
Pleasing, verbs of, 79–82.
Plenty, adjectives of, 113–114; verbs of, 153.
plēnus, 113–114.
Pluperfect tense, indicative, 210, 211.
subjunctive, 246.
in wishes, 229.
in conditions, 307–308.

Pluperfect tense, sequence after, 246.
plūs, 159.
polliceor, 334, 471.
pōnō, 191.
pōscō, 70–72; *pōscō ut*, 262.
Possession, genitive of, 97–100; in predicate, 109.
Possessive adjectives, 18, 27–29, 98; position of, 404.
Possessor, dative of the, 85–86.
Possibility, verbs of, in unreal conditions, 309–310, 356.
possum, with inner object, 66; with infinitive, 329.
future infinitive lacking, 343.
in unreal conditions, 309–310, 356.
post-, in compounds, 83.
postpositives, 412.
postquam, 283–284.
postulō, 70–72, 471; *postulō ut*, 262.
potēns, 113–114.
Potential subjunctive, 232–235.
potior, 165–166, 125.
Power, adjectives of, 113–114; verbs of, 309–310, 356.
prae-, in compounds, 83.
praecipiō, 262.
praeficiō, 475.
praeter-, compounds of, 62.
Predicate adjectives, 1, *b*, 327, 330, 430.
Predicate nominative, 57–58.
Predicate nouns, 57–58, 327, 330.
Predicate genitive, 109.
Prepositions, position of, 414.
Present tense, indicative, 201–202; with *dum*, 286.
subjunctive, 243.
in wishes, 227.
in conditions, 303.
in hortatory subjunctive, 236.
infinitive, 338.
participle, 363.
Preventing, verbs of, 269–271.
Price, ablative of, 163–164.
Primary tenses, 242.
prīmus, 108.
Principal tenses, 242.
priusquam, 289.
prīvō, 149.
prō-, in compounds, 83.
prōcēdō, 475.
prohibeō, with abl., 147–148; with infinitive, 271, 332.
Prohibitions, 240–241.
Promising, verbs of, 334.
prōmittō, 334.
Pronouns, 12–5ϕ.
demonstrative, 30–38.
indefinite, 46–56.
interrogative, 44–45.
personal, 16–20.
reflexive, 19–26.
relative, 12–15, 39–43.
prope, 411.
propior, 94.
Protasis, 298, 302; implied, 312.
prōvideō, 262.
Proviso, clauses of, 290.
proximus, 92, 94, 95.
prūdēns, 113–114.
pudet, 118–119.
Pure perfect, 208–209.
Purpose, clauses of, 253–257, 479; position of, 423; substantive clauses of, 261–263.
Purpose, dative of, 90–91, 483.
putō, 67–69; with gen. of value, 122.

Q

quaerō, acc. of the thing, 61; abl. of the person, 70–72; with inner object, 471.
quality, genitive of, 101–103; in predicate, 109.
ablative of, 140–141.
quam, *than*, omission of, 157–159.
quamdiū, 285.
quamquam, 317–318.
quamvīs, 319.
quandō, 294–295.
quantō . . . tantō, 162.
quasi, 313.
-que, 413.
queror, with acc., 60; with *quod*, 296; with infinitive, 336.
Questions, direct, 214–222.
indirect, 251–252, 222.
double, 221–222.
deliberative or dubitative, 218.
rhetorical, 219–220, 235.
position of verb in, 417.
quī. Cf. **Relative.**
quia, 294–295.
quīdam, 46, 51.
quidem, 412.
quīlibet, 46, 52.
quīn, 269–272.
quis, quid, indefinite pronoun, 46, 48; interrogative pronoun, 44–45.
quispiam, 50.
quisquam, 46, 49.
quisque, 46, 54.
quīvīs, 46, 52.
quō, in purpose clauses, 256.
quō . . . hōc (eō), 162.
quoad, 285, 288.
quoniam, 294–295, 297.
quōminus, 269–270.
quoque, 412.

R

Rating, verbs of, 122.
Real conditions. Cf. **Logical.**
Reciprocal pronouns, 26.
recordor, 116.
recūsō, 269–270.
reddō, 67–69.
Reference, dative of, 87, 91.
rēfert, 124.
refertus, 115.
Reflexive pronouns and adjectives, 19–26, 487, 541.
Refusing, verbs of, 269–271.
Relative clauses.
characteristic, 275–276.
cause, 293.
concession, 316.
purpose, 255.
result, 259.
Relative adjective, 39–43; position, 403.
Relative pronoun, 39–43; 12–15; position, 415.
Relieving, verbs of, 147–148.
relinquō, 382.
reliquum est ut, 264.
reliquus, 108.
Remembering, verbs of, 116.
Reminding, verbs of, 117.
reminīscor, 116.
Removing, 147–148.
Resisting, verbs of, 79–82.
resistō, 79–82.
Respect, ablative of, 142–145.
respondeō, 471.
restat ut, 264.
Result clauses, 258–260, 479; position of, 423.

Result clauses, substantive clauses, 264–265.
retineō, 269–270.
Rhetorical questions, 219–220, 235.
rīdeō, 60.
rogātū, 139.
rogō, 70–72; *rogō ut*, 262.
rūs, 194.

S

Saying, verbs of, 333.
sciō, 329.
scītō, 239.
Secondary tenses, 242.
sententiā, 139.
sentiō, 471.
Separation, ablative of, 146–149.
Sequence of tenses, 242–250, 448; in result clauses, 260.
sequitur ut, 264.
Service, dative of, 90–91.
serving, verbs of, 79–82.
serviō, 79–82.
Sharing, adjectives of, 113–114.
Showing, verbs of, 67–68.
sī, 299, 1.
similis, 92, 95–96.
simulatque (simulac), 283.
Simple conditions. Cf. **Logical.**
sīn, 299, 3.
sinistrā (parte), 189.
sinō, 329, 332, 263.
socius, 113–114.
soleō, 329.
sōlus est quī, 275.
solvō, 147–148.
Source, ablative of, 150.
Sparing, verbs of, 79–82.
Special verbs with dative, 79–82.
Specification, ablative of, 142–145, 463.
spērō, 334.
spoliō, 149.
statuō, 191.
studeō, with dat., 79–82; with infinitive, 329.
studiōsus, 113–114.
sub-, in compounds, 62.
Subject, 57; position of, 400; of infinitive, 333.
Subjunctive mood.
after *priusquam* and *antequam*, 289.
after verbs of doubting, 272.
after verbs of fearing, 266–267.
after verbs of hindering, etc., 269–271.
conditions, 303–308.
deliberative, 218.
hortatory, 236, 241.
in causal clauses, 291–296.
in characteristic clauses, 275–276.
in concessive clauses, 314–322.
in conditional clauses of comparison, 313.
in indirect discourse, 347–350.
in proviso clauses, 290.
in purpose clauses, 253–257.
in result clauses, 258–260.
in substantive clauses, 261–266.
indirect question, 251–252.
jussive, 236, 241.
potential, 232–235.
rhetorical, 219.
sequence of tenses, 242–250.
wishes, 226–231.
with *cum* temporal, 278–280.
with *dum*, 288.
with the impersonal verbs, *licet*, etc., 325–326.
Subordinate clauses, order of, 423.

Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse, 347, 350.
Subordination of clauses, 425.
Substantive clauses, 261–273.
after verbs of doubting, 272–273.
after verbs of fearing, 266–268.
after verbs of hindering, etc., 269–271.
of purpose, 261–263.
of result, 264–265.
Substantive infinitive, 323–332; modified by gen. or adj., 100.
suī, 19–26.
sum, with pred. noun or adj., 58; with gen. of indefinite value, 122; position of, 418.
summus, 108.
super-, in compounds, 83.
Supines, 390–393.
suus, 19–26.

T

Table of conditions in indirect discourse, 355.
taedet, 118–119.
tametsī, 322.
tamquamsī, 313.
Teaching, verbs of, 70–72.
Temporal clauses, 277–289; position of, 422.
temptō, 329.
Tendency, clauses of, 274–276.
teneō, 269–270.
Tenses, of the indicative, 120–123.
present, 201–202.
imperfect, 203–205.
future, 212.
perfect, 206–209.
pluperfect, 210–211.
future perfect, 213.
sequence of tenses, 242–250, 448.
of infinitive, 337–343, 467.
of participle, 362–365, 511.
terrā marīque, 189.
Thinking, verbs of, 333.
Third personal pronouns, 20 ff.
Threatening, verbs of, 79–82.
Time constructions, 167–185, 452.
time when, 167, 170, 452.
time within which, 168, 452.
time how long, duration of time, 169, 452.
timeō, with subjunctive, 266–268; with infinitive, 329.
tōtus, 189.
trādō, 382.
trāns-, in compounds, 62–63.
Trusting, verbs of, 79–82.
Two accusatives, 67–72.

U

ubi, *when*, 283.
Unreal conditions, 305–307; in indirect discourse, 354–355; in dependent clauses, 357; indicative apodosis, 309–310.
ūnus est quī, 275.
ūsus est, 155.
ut, in purpose clauses, 253.
in result clauses, 259.
in substantive clauses, 261–265.
after verbs of fearing, 266–267.
temporal, 283.
concessive, 321.
uter, 45.
ūtilis, 92–93.
utinam, 226–230.
ūtor, 165.
utrum . . . an, 221–222.

V

vacuus, 149.
valeō, 66.
-ve, enclitic, 413.
velim, vellem, 231.
velutsī, 313.
Verbs, syntax of, 201–393; agreement of, 8–11; position of, 400.
vereor, with subjunctive, 226–268; with infinitive, 329.
vērō, 412.
vēscor, 165.
vester, 18.
vestrī and **vestrum**, 17.
vetō, 332, 263.
vī, 132.
videor, with pred. noun or adj., 58; with infinitive, 329.
videō ut, 262.
vidētur, 325, 1.
vīsū, 391.
Vocative case, 59.
volō, 329, 332.
voluntāte, 132.
vulgō, 132.

W

Want, verbs of, 153.
Wishes, 226–231.

Y

Year, method of dating, 182–185.

FIRST BOOK IN LATIN

By ALEXANDER JAMES INGLIS, Instructor in Latin, Horace Mann High School, Teachers College, and VIRGIL PRETTYMAN, Principal Horace Mann High School, Teachers College. Revised Edition. 12mo. Cloth. 301 pages. 90 cents *net*.

A series of sixty-five lessons affording an adequate preparation for the reading of Cæsar. The lessons are carefully graded; the rules, clear and concise.

Without assuming much knowledge of English grammar on the part of the student, the general principles of inflection and syntax are gradually developed.

The selection of words for the vocabulary is based on the latest and most systematic analysis of the vocabulary of the authors usually read in our schools. Words have been chosen with particular attention to their comparative frequency of occurrence, and with especial reference to the vocabulary of Cæsar, so that few words have been admitted which are not of very common occurrence in that author.

The exercises consist of three parts: detached Latin sentences; a passage of connected Latin; and sentences for translation from English into Latin. The detached Latin sentences are intended for practice in the paradigms and syntax of the lesson, while the passages of connected Latin afford practice in reading narrative Latin and review work in vocabulary and syntax.

A simple system of reference and cross reference is employed so that any page, paragraph, or footnote may be quickly found. The paradigms presenting the inflections of the various parts of speech are found in Appendix I. A summary of rules is given in Appendix II.

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY
Publishers 64-66 Fifth Avenue New York

MACMILLAN'S LATIN SERIES

Prepared under the general editorship of J. C. KIRTLAND, Jr., Professor of Latin in the Phillips-Exeter Academy, Exeter, N.H.
Each volume, 12mo. Cloth.

Cornelius Nepos — Twenty Lives

Edited by J. E. BARSS, Latin Master in the Hotchkiss School, Lakeville, Conn. Maps and Illustrations. xiv + 316 pages. 90 cents *net*.

The Poems of Ovid — Selections

Edited by C. W. BAIN, Professor of Ancient Languages in South Carolina College, and recently Head-master of the Sewanee Grammar School of the University of the South. Illustrations. xiv + 461 pages. $1.10 *net*.

Marcus Tullius Cicero — Ten Orations, with the Letters to his Wife

Edited by R. A. VON MINCKWITZ, De Witt Clinton High School, New York City. Maps and Illustrations. xii + 518 pages. $1.25 *net*.

IN PREPARATION

Cæsar — The Gallic War

Edited by A. L. HODGES, Wadleigh High School, New York City.

Vergil — The Æneid

Edited by D. O. S. LOWELL and C. W. GLEASON, Roxbury Latin School.

Sallust — The Catiline

Edited by J. C. KIRTLAND, Jr., Phillips-Exeter Academy.

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY
Publishers 64-66 Fifth Avenue New York

MACMILLAN'S LATIN SERIES

GENERAL PLAN OF THE SERIES

The volumes of this series have been prepared by practical teachers who have had actual experience in teaching Latin in secondary schools.

To furnish material for so-called reading at sight, a portion of the text of each author has been printed with only such brief notes as are absolutely necessary to the understanding of the text.

The notes refer to the grammars of Allen and Greenough, Bennett, Gildersleeve and Lodge, Harkness, and Lane and Morgan.

The type is large and clear, generously spaced and leaded; the paper of a dull tint restful to the eyes; the binding firm, but such as to allow the books to open flat. Maps, plans, and illustrations are numerous, and are chosen not for ornament but for real illustration.

Cornelius Nepos

This edition contains all of the Lives that any teacher will care to have a class read. The Praefatio and thirteen of the Lives have been edited with full notes, the remaining Lives with footnotes for more rapid reading or for sight reading. The vocabulary covers both divisions of the text, and simple word-groups for the study of word-formation.

The Poems of Ovid

This edition consists of about three thousand verses, with a complete commentary, and about one thousand verses for rapid reading, with brief notes. The selections from the Metamorphoses, which form the greater part of the book, are put first, and are more fully annotated than the selections from the other writings. A brief summary of the general laws of prosody is given in the Introduction, together with copious exercises, and all long vowels are indicated in the earlier selections.

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

Publishers **64-66 Fifth Avenue** **New York**

Marcus Tullius Cicero

Ten orations are here presented — the four against Catiline, those on the Manilian Law, for the poet Archias, and for Milo, the Fourteenth Philippic, and those for Marcellus and for Ligarius. The last two orations, together with the fourteenth book of the *Epistulae ad Familiares*, have been annotated with a view to sight reading, the notes being brief and placed at the corresponding page of Latin text. The orations selected are such as will satisfy the entrance requirements of any college or university in the United States.

The Introduction treats in a comprehensive, clear, and interesting way of the life and character of Cicero; of the orations presented in this edition; of the letters; and finally, of the Roman Constitution, with special reference to its bearing upon the subject-matter of the orations.

The Notes are the result of many years of class-room experience. They represent to some extent the need of explanation, as shown by the questions of students in their daily recitations.

Cæsar: The Gallic War

(*Nearly ready.*)

The text will embrace the whole of Cæsar's Gallic War, and will be illustrated by maps and cuts in the text and also by a series of general maps in colors. A feature of the map scheme is the fact that all the maps used to show the principal campaigns are drawn on the same scale as the general map of Gaul. The result is that the student, instead of having a confused notion of the character of Cæsar's campaigns, as is caused by the several maps being drawn on entirely different scales, each one different from the other and all different from the general map, secures a very correct and accurate notion of the real extent of country covered by the individual campaigns in their relation to each other. The text will be supplemented by a comprehensive general introduction and also by notes and vocabulary especially prepared for this edition.

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

Publishers **64-66 Fifth Avenue** **New York**

This book should be returned to the Library on or before the last date stamped below.

A fine of five cents a day is incurred by retaining it beyond the specified time.

Please return promptly.

MAR 12 1937